ePages 5

Merchant User Guide

- Version 5.02 -



The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice at any time.

This document and all of its parts are protected by copyright. All rights, including copying, reproduction, translation, storage on microfilm and all forms of archival and processing in electronic form are expressly reserved.

All corporations, products, and trade names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective owners.

Copyright  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$  2005 ePages Software GmbH All rights reserved.

Should you have questions or suggestions about our products, please contact us at the following address:

ePages Software GmbH Leutragraben 1 07443 Jena Germany

Tel.: +49 (0) 36 41 / 5 73 - 10 0 Fax: +49 (0) 36 41 / 5 73 - 11 1

E-mail: pm@ePages.de WWW: www.ePages.com

Jena, September 2005

# Table of Contents

1.	Introduction	9
	General Information	9
	Prerequisites	9
2.	Quick Start	
3.	Administration Page	17
2.	Data Management for Signed-in Users - Administrator Men	
	Editing Sign-in Data	
	Deletion Confirmation	
	Signing Out	18
	History	19
	Favorites	19
	Tray	19
	Setup Assistant	
	Repeating Functionality	
	Context-Sensitive Help	
	Opening Shop Views	
	Shop Home Page	
	Preview	
	Default Settings	
	Visibility	
	Batch Processes in Tables	
	Sorting in Tables	
	Sorting Using Column Headings	
	Sort via Sorting Key Navigation History	-
	Using HTML Commands in Entry Fields	
	WYSIWYG Editor	
	Attribute Types	
	Using Text with Value Selection	
	Import and Export	
	Export	
	Import	31
4.	Settings	33
	Shop Status	
	General	
	Optimization	
	Utilization	
	Shop Address	
	User Management	
	Creating a New User	
	User Details - General	
	Country Settings	
	Regional Settings	
	Languages	
	Currencies	
	Special Case - Swiss Francs	
	E-mail Settings	
	E-mail Settings - General	
	E-mail Settings - Events	37

Event E-mail - Details
Special Case: E-mail messages for the merchant
Special Case: Contact e-mail for the customer
Tax Calculation
Tax Matrix40
Tax Areas
Tax Classes41
Tax Model41
Shipping and Payment
Shipping Methods
Creating New Shipping Methods
General Properties for Shipping Methods
Fixed Price Shipping Methods
Shipping Methods with Free Shipping Limits
Payment Methods44
Creating New Payment Methods45
General Properties for Payment Methods46
Direct Debit Payment Methods
Fixed Price Payment Methods
Payment Methods with Exemption Limits
Payment Method with Credit Card, Manual
Payment Method via T-Pay
Dependencies
Shipping Options
Shipping Options: Details - General
Shipping Options: Details - Selecting
Deferred Payment
-
Customer Settings
Customer Groups
Registration
Countries65
Sign In65
Customer Attributes66
Creating a New Customer Attribute66
Editing the Details of an Attribute66
Shopping Basket and Orders67
Add to Basket Action67
Adding a Duplicate Product67
Minimum Order Value68
Allow Tax Area Selection68
Confirm Terms and Conditions68
Texts
Product Settings
Stock
Auto Cross Selling70
eBay Settings
Preparation
General eBay Settings
eBay Accounts
eBay Accounts - Details
Authentication
Request Authentication
Apply Authentication
Templates74
Templates – Details

	Configuring Notification E-mail75
5.	Products
	Product Details77
	General Product Details – Prices/Stock
	General Product Details – Description
	General Product Details – Attributes
	Product Details – Images – Images
	Slideshow
	Product Details - Categories83
	Product Details - Variations
	Creating a Variation
	Working with Variations
	Variation Products
	Variation Products and Cross Selling
	Extending Variations Later
	Product Details - Prices
	Quantity Discount/Bulk Prices89
	Value Discount
	Discount Calculation For Product Prices
	Product Details – Cross Selling91 Cross Selling - Accessories
	Cross Selling - Accessories
	Cross Selling - Product Comparison
	Product Details – eBay
	Creating a New Product
	Product Bundles
	Associated Products
	Information About Bundles
	Product Types
	Default Product Type
	Creating a New Product Type95
	Product Type – General Details
	Product Type – Details – Attributes
	Creating a New Attribute
	Attribute – Details96 Attribute – Details - Value Selection97
	Product Type – Details – Layout
	Price Lists
	Creating New Price Lists
	Price List Details – General
	Price List Details – Customer Groups
	Price List Details - Customers
	Price List Details - Shopping Basket Discount
	Import and Export 102
	BMECat-Import102
	Product Searches103
	Product Search in the Administration Area
	Searching Text 104
	Inventory Search 104
	Advanced Product Search 105
	Product Search in the Shop105
6.	Customers107
	Customer Details – General - Address

	Customer Details – General - Customer Account
	Customer Details – General – Sign In
	Customer Details – General - Attributes
	Customer Details - Orders111
	Creating New Customers112
	Import and Export 112
	Searching for Customers
	Simple Search
	Advanced Search113
7.	Categories115
	Types of Structure Elements
	Basic Category
	Categories
	Creating a Category117
	Category Details - Pages117
	Category Details - General117
	Category Details - Products118 Category Details - Layout
	Articles
	Design Your Own Pages
	Link
	Home Page
	Contact Information
	Terms and Conditions123
	Customer Information124
	Promotional Products125
	Promotional Products - General Properties
	Promotional Products - Products125
	Import and Export 126
	Categories - Import/Export126
	Category - Product Assignment - Import/Export126
_	BMECat-Import
8.	Design129
	Styles
	Applying Template Styles129
	General130
	Navigation Bars
	General Design Attributes131 Symbol Set133
	Navigation
	Navigation Elements
	Customization
	Customization Information137
	Horizontal Areas 138
	Vertical Areas
	Content Area
0	Settings
9.	Orders143
	Search
	Simple Search
	Advanced Search
	Orders – General145

Editing Address and Order Details14	47
Order Details1	48
Orders – Documents 14	49
Packing Slip1	50
UPS Packing Slip1	
Requirements1	
Activating Order Tracking1	
Exporting Delivery Data	-
Importing to WorldShip and Generating a Tracking Number	
Order Tracking Activating1	
Order Tracking in the Shop1	
Invoice1	
Credit Note1	
Finalizing Documents10	60
WorldPay16	51
General WorldPay Information10	61
Registration with WorldPay1	.61
Testing a WorldPay Transaction1	62
Finalizing the Transaction with WorldPay1	62
WorldPay Transactions10	62
WorldPay Order Searches10	
T-Pay	
T-Pay allgemein	
Zahlungsvorgang aus Sicht des Kunden 1	
T-Pay-Transaktionen	_
Auslösen der Transaktion 1	
Suche nach T-Pay-Transaktionen	
10. Marketing16	
Newsletter Campaigns16	
Creating a Newsletter Campaign1	
Newsletter Campaigns – Details – General	
Newsletter Campaigns – Details – Newsletter10	69
Creating a New Newsletter 1	
Newsletter Details – General 1	
Sending a Newsletter	171
	171
Newsletter Details – Attachments	
Newsletter Details – Recipients1	
Newsletter Campaigns – Details – Addressees1 Subscriptions for Registered Users	/4
Subscriptions for Non-Registered Users	
Addressee List1	
Manually Entering Addressees	
Adding from the Tray	
Importing Addressees1	75
Coupons	76
Coupon Campaign – General1	
Coupon Campaign – Condition1	
Coupon Campaign – Coupon Codes	
Using Coupons in Newsletters 1	
Pangora	
Pangora Export – General Properties	
Pangora Export – Products	
Evnort	
Export18 Pangora Export Errors	83

	Kelkoo	
	Kelkoo – General Properties184	í.
	Kelkoo – Products	
	Export	5
	Kelkoo Export Errors 187	
	Google Registration	
	Froogle	7
	Froogle– General Properties	
	Froogle – Products	
	Export	
	Froogle Export Errors	
	Trusted Shops	
	•	
	etracker	
	Product Recommendations192	2
	eBay	2
	Offers	3
	Batch Processing 192	4
	Duplicate	
	Creating Repeating Offers 192	
	Verify	
	Upload to eBay	
	Delete195 Update All Offers	
	Create New Offer	
	Offer Settings/eBay Assistant	
	Title	
	Category	
	Details197	7
	Layout197	
	Shipping	
	Payment	
	Verification	
	Default Values	
	Orders	
	Performing Searches for eBay Offers	
	Simple Search	
	Advanced Search	
11.	Glossary202	) -
12.	Index	)

# 1. Introduction

## **General Information**

This software is a modern and future-proof e-business platform for mid-sized businesses. Simple administration and a high range of functionality provide the foundation for efficient and successful online business. With it, you can serve the complete bandwidth of clients from a simple Web shop to a complex corporate e-commerce solution.

The standardized technology platform is highly flexible and extendable. This allows quick implementation of customer-specific customizations.

The many functions of our standard software provide the foundation for quick implementation of varied business models with low operating costs.

The program provides a high degree of scalability. Together with the high-performance database, the highest requirements for data volume and access can be met.

The focus of the software, in addition to the large standard package of features, is on security, modular architecture, scalability, high availability, and on a user-friendly interface.

The program lets you, as the merchant, set up a Web shop on the Internet. You can maintain your shop, offer your products, and take care of your customers, all without a lot of help from a service provider.

This software is an uncomplicated, attractively priced, and effective introduction to e-commerce. With this system, you are setting up an additional sales channel for your area of business.

You can reach your customers on the Internet without specialized technical knowledge or excessive hardware costs.

## Prerequisites

The program is browser-based. In order to work comfortably and enjoy all the advantages of the modern graphic user interface, you should use the following browsers:

- Recommended: Internet Explorer 5.5 and above
- Mozilla 1.6 and above

The program is optimized for a screen resolution of 1,024 x 786 pixels and a color depth of at least 65,000 colors.

Your browser must allow JavaScript and the use of session cookies.

**Note:** Check whether your browsers block pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

# 2. Quick Start

After the following steps, your shop will be ready to be opened for business:

### Sign In

In your browser, enter the Internet address that was sent to you for your shop. It should be structured as follows:

http://<servername>/epages/Store.storefront/?ObjectPath=/Shops/<shopname>&ViewActi on=MBO-ViewMBO

Note that <shopname> is the name or ID of your shop.

The first time you sign in, enter your user name and password. This information has either been sent to you or you have already defined it yourself in the course of setting up the shop.

Caution: The first thing you should do is change your password so that no unauthorized person can use the system. See the chapter *Editing Sign-in* Data on page 17.

The setup assistant will now take you through four steps for configure the most important settings. This will help you quickly set up a functional shop with an appealing design.

#### **Creating Categories**

The next step is to set up a basic catalog structure. In the upper navigation bar, click **Categories**.

First, we will create a category called *Products*. You can assign your products to this category later. Enter the values as shown in Figure 1.

Categories           General         Pages         Products         Layout					
ID ID	Name	Туре	Sort Order		
Products	Products	Category 💙	9999		
Save					

Figure 1: Information for the category *Products* 

Save your entries by clicking **Save**. Now you have to set the category to *Visible*. To do this, click the **Products** link in the table. After this, click the **General** tab. On the page in Figure 2, click the option button *Yes* for the option *Visible*.

Categories + Products		
General 🖗 Pages Products Layout		
ID Products Visible OYes No English	Translation	Deutsch
Name		
Products		
Text		
Image Browse Scale Image	Preview	
Save Delete	_	

Figure 2: Switching the Products category to visible

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

For more details on how to create additional categories and complex structures, see the *Categories* chapter on page 115.

#### **Create Products**

In the second step, create a product and assign it to a category. To do this, click **Products** in the upper navigation bar. Click the **New Product** link.

The most important data you need to enter is a product number, a price, and the correct tax class. Set the status for *Visible* to *Yes*. Of course, you can also fill out the other fields right now, if you like. Click the **Description** link. Here you must enter at least the name for the product.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Finally, assign the product to the category *Products*. To do this, click the **Categories** tab. Click the drop-down menu listing all the existing categories and select the category *Products*. See Figure 3.

Products + Raincover XV5 (0815) General Images Categories 🖗 Variations Prices Cross Selling eBay	
Assigned Categories	
Categories 👻	
(Select Entry) Categories	
Categories/Products	

Figure 3: Selecting the category *Products* 

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

For a complete description on how to best implement and use all the product functions, refer to *Products* on page 77.

### **Testing Essential System Settings**

This section describes how to check several system parameters. These settings are available when you first start but should still nevertheless be checked.

Verify the country settings. To do this, click **Settings** in the upper navigation bar. Then, on the next page, click the for link**Country Settings**.

For a comprehensive description for editing the country settings, refer to *Country* Settings on page 36.

At least one shipping and one payment method are set up by default. If you would like to verify these settings, click the **Shipping and Payment** link in the context menu.

First you will see the shipping methods page. To modify the settings for this method or to define additional methods, refer to *Shipping* Methods on page 42.

Click the **Payment Methods** tab to see the default payment methods. With this payment method active, your shop is functional immediately. To modify the settings for this method or to define additional methods, refer to *Payment* Methods on page 44.

When this is done, you have fulfilled all the prerequisites to operate your shop.

#### Home Page Design Elements

You have already used the setup assistant to define a basic design and to enter important data to identify your shop. This is usually enough to present your customers a beautiful shop with an appropriate design. Of course, you have many options for designing the shop to meet your individual needs. There are a number of function and design elements available for this.

At this point, we would like to give you a short overview of the basic shop home page elements including information about what the elements do, how you can access them in the administration area, and where you can find the corresponding detailed descriptions in the user guide.

Figure 4 shows a shop home page with highlighted design elements.



Figure 4: Default design elements for the shop home page

The design elements used are as follows:

Table 1	· Homo	nago	docian	elements	
Table 1	. 1101116	page	uesign	elements	

No.	Name	Path in Administration Area	Description in Manual
1	Shop logo	<b>Design &gt;&gt; Settings</b> or Setup Assistant	<i>Settings</i> on page 141 or <i>Setup</i> Assistant on page 19
2	Shop Name	Settings >> General or Setup Assistant	<i>Shop</i> Status on page 33 or <i>Setup</i> Assistant on page 19
3	Slogan	Design >> Settings or Setup Assistant	<i>Settings</i> on page 141 or <i>Setup</i> Assistant on page 19
4	Link to Home Page	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
5	Contact Information	Categories >> Contact Information	<i>Contact</i> Information, on page 122
6	Link to Contact Form	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
7	Terms and Conditions	Categories >> Terms and Conditions	<i>Terms</i> and Conditions, on page 123
8	Customer Information	Categories >> Customer Information	Customer Information, on page 124

No.	Name	Path in Administration Area	Description in Manual
9	Link to Shopping Basket	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
10	List of Main Categories	Design ›› <current style=""> ›› Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
11	Home Pages text	Categories >> Home Page	<i>Home</i> Page, on page 121
12	Compressed basket view	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
13	Full-text product search	Design ›› <current style=""> ›› Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
14	Products on the Home Page	Categories >> Products	Basic Category, on page 116
15	Sign-in pane	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
16	Promotional Products	Categories >> Promotional Products	Promotional Products, on page 125
17	Items on the Home Page	Categories >> Pages - Create items here.	<i>Articles</i> , on page 118
18	Currency drop-down menu	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
19	Flags for language selection	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
20	Info text	Design >> Settings	Settings on page 141.
21	Trusted Shops seal	Design >> <current style=""> &gt;&gt; Navigation</current>	<i>Navigation</i> Elements, on page 135
22	Copyright	<b>Design &gt;&gt; Settings</b> or Setup Assistant	<i>Settings</i> , on page 141

Use the navigation elements to position the links and functions. For more information on this, see *Navigation* on page 133. The chapter *Design* on page 129 contains a detailed description about how to customize the layout and design.

#### Testing

Before you make the Internet address of your Web shop public, it is a good idea to test your Web shop as if you were your own customer. When you do this, you can check whether your settings or changes (for your logo, design, products, and so on) have been correctly applied and are displayed as planned.

It is also important to check whether e-mail messages such as registration confirmations or order confirmations are being sent. Sign yourself in as a customer and provide a valid e-mail address to which messages can be sent.

**Note:** If e-mail messages are not being sent properly although you entered all the addresses correctly, have your provider check the system settings.

If the tests run to your satisfaction, delete all the sample data (products, customers, etc.) and make the Internet address of your shop available to your clientèle.

We wish you a successful Internet venture!

# 3. Administration Page



The administration page appears immediately after you sign in.

Figure 5: Administration page after sign-in

The page is divided into the following three functional areas: the main navigation bar (shown as area number 1 above), the left navigation area (area number 2), and the working area (area number 3) in the middle of the page.

The book symbol (in the red circle) is displayed for each area that has context sensitive help. For more on this, see *Context-Sensitive Help* on page 20.

You can open this home page from any point in the administration area. To do so, click the logo to the right in the navigation bar.

## Data Management for Signed-in Users - Administrator Menu

To edit your own user data or to sign off of the system, use the functions in the administrator menu found on the upper part of the left navigation bar.

### Editing Sign-in Data

At this point, check your data as a registered user. Enter the desired changes in the respective text fields.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Name for Display		Entry field, alphanumeric	Shop Administrator
User Name	User Name for Registration	Entry field, alphanumeric	admin
E-mail	If you forget your current password for signing into the administration area, a new password will be sent to the address entered here.	Entry field, alphanumeric	<u>admin@epages.de</u>
Old Password	Enter the currently valid password here.	Entry field, alphanumeric	admin
New Password		Entry field, alphanumeric	Shopadmin
Password Confirmation		Entry field, alphanumeric	Shop admin
Language	Display language for administration	Drop-down menu	
<b>Deletion Confirmation</b>	See <i>Deletion Confirmation</i> below.	Check box	
Automatically sign-in via cookies	Access to the administration area without the sign-in process. Cookies must be allowed in the browser to do this.	Check box	

#### Table 2: Fields for user data

To change the password or create a new one, you must enter the currently valid password in the *Old Password* field. If you do not enter the current password, the password change will not take effect.

<u>Note</u>: Even if you use a long password, only the first 8 characters are checked. The rest of the characters after the 8th are not relevant for security and will be ignored. For this reason, you should only use passwords of up to 8 characters in length.

#### **Deletion Confirmation**

Before data is deleted, you will be asked whether you are sure you want to delete the data. Only after you confirm the deletion is the data deleted.

<u>Caution</u>: If you clear the <u>Deletion Confirmation</u> check box, every deletion is executed immediately and without deletion confirmation. You will not be able to cancel this action later. Consider this before clearing the selection. We recommend that only experienced users deactivate this feature.

<u>Caution</u>: If the Automatic Sign-in with Cookie option is selected, everyone who uses your computer will have access to the administration area. Make sure that, in this case, only authorized persons have access to the computer.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Signing Out

If you want to leave the administration area of your shop, click **Sign out** in the administrator menu.

Sign out to make sure that the connection to the system is correctly and securely ended and that no unauthorized user can access the administration area of your site.

After you sign out, the sign-in page will appear again.

## History

The *History* list saves the links to the last ten pages opened while working in the administration area. The page last opened is at the beginning of the list and is displayed in bold letters.

You can easily save the pages you visit often by assigning them to your favorites (see chapter *Favorites*). Do this by clicking the symbol (light blue star with a green plus sign).

## Favorites

This area contains the Web pages in your administration area that you need most often. Click the links in this list to access those pages more quickly and easily.

You can simply transfer these addresses from the History. See the chapter History.

Your favorites remain even after signing off and are available to you when you sign in again. You can have an unlimited number of favorites.

## Tray

The tray is an area for temporarily storing various groups of objects. Use this to easily collect and store objects in one area of the program so that you can use them in another area. Examples of the kind of objects you can store here are products or customers.

The box shows all the object groups that you have created during the current session. The number of elements in the group is shown in parentheses.

<u>Note:</u> One group is created for customers and a separate group for categories. For products, there is a group for each product type.

To save objects in the tray, use the corresponding save functions in the individual working areas, for example, batch processing actions for products or customers.

## Setup Assistant

Use the setup assistant to easily make changes to the basic settings for the shop design, description, and contact data. You can do this in four steps and without having to learn more about the functions for designing your styles.

Note: Remember that the setup assistant will overwrite existing settings.

Click Finish to apply the changes to the shop in your system.

*Caution:* When you apply the data by clicking *Finish*, the following data will be overwritten:

- A style of the same name in the style list; any previous changes will be lost.
- Any given shop name, slogan, and existing logo.
- The address information that you entered for the contact information page. See *Contact* Information on page 122.
- All e-mail sender information in the contact information page and for the e-mail settings. See *E-mail* Settings on page 37.

Fields in which you did not enter any information will not overwrite the existing data.

## **Repeating Functionality**

### **Context-Sensitive Help**

Context-sensitive Help is available for every function and view area. Open the Help function by clicking the book symbol ( ).

Links on the Help pages lead to further explanations. The following functions are available from within Help:

⑦	Go back one page.
•	Go forward one page.
1	Display the Table of Contents for the entire Help section.
<u>_</u>	Save a bookmark for this page.
۵	Print the current page.

## **Opening Shop Views**

#### Shop Home Page

You can open the home page of your Web shop at any time. To do this, click the name of your shop shown in the administrator menu as a link. See Figure 6.



Figure 6: Link to the shop home page

This link is located in the same place on all the pages in the administration area.

The shop view opens in a new browser window so that you can conveniently keep track of both areas, that is, the working area of the administration area in one window and the shop view in the new window.

Note that your administrator sign-in is used for this shop view. When you sign out of the shop, you are also automatically signed out of your administration.

If you would like to use the shop as a non-registered customer or with a different registration, first close the browser and then re-open the browser with the shop in a new window.

#### Preview

Some actions in the working area directly effect the view in the shop, for example, product image updates, price changes, or new language activation, and so on.

For each of these actions, you can use the context menu to make immediate changes in the corresponding area in the shop. To do this, click the *View in Shop* link. See Figure 7 and Figure 8.

#### Administration Page

#### **Repeating Functionality**



Figure 7: Shop view, opened for categories

2 Shop-Administrator ⇒ Sign out	Products Eureka Seneral 👰 Ima	El Capitan IV (eg_1 Iges Categories		» Home Page »	> Contact informatio	n » Contact » Terms and Conditions » Customer Informati
Products	1		Categories	Categories » Eurek	a El Capitan IV	
	Tax Class	eg_1000111010 • Yes No 5339:55 C C 5339:55 S ent Yes • No -1/ standard Piece	Jackets Shoes Backpacks Tents Equipment Product Search Advanced Search Special Offers Black Bear Cemini			Eureka El Capitan IV Dome tent for four people. Two doors and well-out apais enable effective use of space and make the stay comfortable. Inclued: 16 states, cords. Inclued: 16 states, cords. Inclued: 16 states, cords. S339.95 / Piece
🖁 History 🙀		1 Piece	\$29.95	+ II 4 IF     + Product C     set1NR8     Further Product Information		→ Product Comparison
Eureka El Capitan I 🎲	Interval	1 Piece	WILLES INCO	Weight	4.89 kg	
Categories - Category				Pack size	Ø 25 x 60	am and a second s
Categories - Pages Administration Home Shipping Methods	Amount in Product	(Select Er	Meindl Air Revolution 2.0 \$169.95 Mag Lite Mini	Outer material	RipStop Po Polyester	lyester PU
Shop Status - General Shop Wizard Shop Wizard Shop-Administrator Shop-Administrator	Attributes	Delete Copyright © 2005	\$16.95 Do you have any questions? Call our toil-free number at 0 800 / 123 456 We are happy to help.			

Figure 8: Shop view, opened for a product

## **Default Settings**

Default settings in this context are preset settings. If you make a number of values available for specific parameters (for example, currencies, language, shipping method, and so on), there is always one value that is selected or active. This is the default value. The user can choose to use this value or to select another value.

It is best to set the value of the default setting to one that corresponds to what your customers use most.

Simply click the option button for the parameter that you would like to define as the default setting. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Visibility

Frequently, you can set the visibility for parameters or objects, for example, via check boxes in tables or option buttons in forms. If you activate visibility, the customer can see these parameters in the Web shop and edit them if necessary. If you clear the corresponding field, the customer can no longer see the element. In this way, you can first prepare specific settings and functions in advance, for example, for products or shipping methods, but activate them later or reserve the option to turn them on or off.

Select the parameter check box that is supposed to be visible and available to the customer. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

hippi	ing Methods  Payment Methods	Dependencies Shipping Optic	ons Deferre	ed Payment	
	Shipping Method	Calculation Model	Visible	Default	Sort Order
	😝 Postal Service	Free Shipping Over	<b>v</b>	۲	10
	🚱 Express Delivery	Flat Rate		0	20
	🤪 Customer Pickup	Free Shipping		0	30
		(Select Entry)			9999

Figure 9: Example of visibility

**Note:** Newly created elements such as products, categories, and so on, are set by default to *Not Visible* so that you can first collect all the necessary data without the element already appearing in the shop.

## Batch Processes in Tables

Batch processes in tables are actions that apply to a number of selected table entries at one time. The batch processing actions are located in a drop-down menu underneath the corresponding table. See Figure 10.

	Product Number △♡	Name ∆⊽	List Price ∆⊽	∆⊽ Stock Level
. 🕡	be_40401 ⊡	Berghaus Paclite Jacket - Men	\$199.95	
	be_40402 🗗	Berghaus Paclite Jacket - Women	\$199.95	
. 🕡	cg_0100504001	Campingaz Twister 270	\$22.95	11
	cg_0101004270	Campingaz CV270 Valve Gas Canister	\$3.95	10
<b>?</b>	cg_0101104470	Campingaz CV470 Valve Gas Canister	\$7.95	5
] 🥡	de_3201212002	Deuter Hydro 2.0	\$74.95	25
	de_3203104010	Deuter Kangaroo	\$99.95	10
<b>I</b>	de_3206199010	Deuter Teddy Bear	\$26.95	11
	eg_1000111010	Eureka El Capitan IV	\$339.95	12
0	er_7142303001	Edelrid Black Bear Seil	\$1.45	500
Page 1	of 3	K < [1] 2 3 → >I	Toi	tal products: 22
Select I Select E dd to T Set Visib	Entry) Tray			

Figure 10: Table with batch processing

First select the objects that should be the target of batch processing. Then choose the action from the drop-down menu. Finally, start the action by clicking the **Execute** button.

**Note:** The *Select All* function works on all the entries displayed. In order to be able to select other entries, they must first be visible.

The following general actions will not be further explained in the individual chapters:

Action	Comment	
Add to Tray	Selected items are added to the tray. For more information about this, see <i>Tray</i> on page 19.	
Set Visible	For more on this, see <i>Visibility</i> on page 23.	
Set not Visible	For more on this, see <i>Visibility</i> on page 23.	
Duplicate	Generate an exact copy of the original item.	
Delete	For more on this, see <i>Deletion Confirmation</i> on page 18.	
Delete all ()	Deletes all the table entries. Selection is not necessary.	

Table 3: General	l batch	processing actions	
Tuble J. Genera	Duttin	processing actions	

The individual chapters only explain special batch processing actions or describe particular features relating to the general actions.

## Sorting in Tables

#### Sorting Using Column Headings

In some tables, mainly the long ones, you can sort the table by columns.

Each column heading is a link. When you click the link, the column is sorted. The small arrows to the left next to the column heading indicate the sort direction of the currently active column. The left arrow pointing upwards indicates ascending sort order. The right arrow pointing downwards indicates descending sort order.

Clicking on the column heading or the arrow reverses the current sort direction as indicated by the filled arrow.

In multi-page lists, the first page is displayed after sorting.

#### Sort via Sorting Key

Another way of sorting table entries is to sort using a sorting key.

Every table row has a key field. In this field, you type in a numerical value which determines the position of the respective row in the table. An example of this is shown in Figure 11.

	ID AV	Name ∆⊽	<b>Type</b> ∆⊽	Sort Order 🔺
	NewShopServices	Fresh wind in the online shop	Article	10
D 🕻	Jackets	Jackets	Category	20
	Shoes	Shoes	Category	30
	Rucksacks	Backpacks	Category	40
	🕽 Tents	Tents	Category	50
D 🕻	🕽 Equipment	Equipment	Category	60
	Books_Maps	Books & Maps	Category	70
	Products	Products	Category	80
			Category 💙	9999

Figure 11: Sorting with the sorting key

Changing the key values lets you sort the table entries any way you like.

The sorting key is entered in increments of 10 so that new entries can be sorted quickly and without a lot of work. After sorting, the key fields are again displayed in increments of 10.

Note: This sorting action affects both the shop display and the administration area.

### **Navigation History**

If you are in the detail view of an attribute, for example, and want to return to the previous table, use the *Navigation History*. This shows you the path you used to arrive in the detail view and which detail view you are accessing. If you want to return to the table, simply click the link with the table name.

In Figure 12, you see the *Navigation History* above the detail view for the attribute *Material*. Click the **Product Types** link to see a table showing the product types.

Click Jacket to open the table of attributes associated with Jacket.

General 📚 Value Se	lection		
ID	Color		
Туре	Language dependent text wit	n value selection	
Visible	💽 Yes 🔿 No		
Name	Farbe	Deutsch	
	Color	English	
Bubble Help Text		Deutsch	
		English	

Figure 12: Example of navigation history

## Using HTML Commands in Entry Fields

There are text fields in the program where you can insert *HTML tags* for building entire Web pages or for displaying simple text more effectively to the user.

These fields can be identified by the symbol to the left above the field name, 🧮.

For simple formatting, the functions *bold*, *italics* or *underline* are the most useful. The tags listed in Table 4 will cover most if not all of your requirements.

Тад	Meaning	Use	Effect
<b></b>	The following text is shown in <b>bold</b> .	<b>Bold</b>	Bold
<i></i>	The following text is shown <i>italicized</i> .	<i>iitalic</i>	Italic
<u></u>	The following text is shown <u>underlined</u> .	<u>underlined</u>	<u>Underlined</u>
<s></s>	The following text is shown <del>struck out</del> .	<s>struck out</s> 	<del>struck out</del>
 	A carriage return is inserted at this point in the text.	at ‹br/›this point	The text is continued on the next line.

#### Table 4: Selection of HTML formatting tags

**Note:** For further information about design options, we recommend consulting publications about HTML or the site http://www.selfhtml.org/ (only partially in English).

### WYSIWYG Editor

Together with the previous chapter, the program offers an easy way to format HTML fields: a WYSIWYG editor. WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get) means that during editing text is displayed exactly as your customers will see it in the shop. You format the text not with HTML tags directly but using buttons with formatting functions. This has the advantage for you that you can simply and professionally design texts without knowing formatting commands.

This editor can be used for all text fields that are indicated by the HTML symbol 🔳. Start the editor by clicking the HTML symbol. The text in the corresponding field is moved into the editor.

The editor is opened in a separate browser window, as shown in the following figure.

#### **Repeating Functionality**



Figure 13: WYSIWYG editor

The editor offers the following functions:

Тад	Meaning
B	The selected text is shown in <b>bold</b> .
I	The selected text is shown <i>italicized</i> .
U	The selected text is shown <u>underlined</u> .
5	The selected text is shown <del>struck out</del> .
it.	The text is left-aligned.
T	The text is centered.
	The text is shown right-aligned.
1	The selected rows are shown as a numbered list.
	1
	2
	3
E:	The selected rows are shown as an unordered list.
	•
	•
	•
<b>€</b>	Each click moves the selected text one tab to the right.
<b>•</b>	Each click moves the selected text one tab to the left.
	Select some text and click a color in the matrix. The text is shown in the selected color.

#### Table 5: WYSIWYG editor functions

A PROPERTY AND A PROP

Тад	Meaning
(Font) (Font) Arial Courier New Lucida Sans Tahoma Times New Roman Trebuchet MS Verdana	Select some text and choose a font. The text appears in the selected font.
✓ (Format) ▼ (Format) Paragraph Headline1 Headline2 Headline3	Select text and choose a format template. The text appears with the applied formatting. You must separate the text to be formatted by pressing <i>Enter</i> and inserting a carriage return, otherwise the whole text will be formatted!

After you have edited the text in the editor and wish to save your changes, click **Apply**. The text is then entered in the original text field formatted in HTML. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

*Caution:* If you do not finish by clicking **Save**, the changes will not be saved in the text field and will not be shown in the shop!

**Note:** More complex additions such as links, images, and so on, must be added manually at the correct location in the text field.

## Attribute Types

When creating attributes, for example, for product types, you need to define the attribute type.

This means that you define whether this attribute should be displayed and processed as, for example, a character string (text), a number, a date, or a logical value in the system. In other words, you define what kind of value you or the customer can enter here. The individual attribute types have the following meanings:

Туре	Meaning	Use	Example
Text	Character string, word, sentence	Entry fields for names, addresses, text, and so on. You can use any character. There are no length restrictions.	Text field
Language- dependent text	Language- dependent text	These variable types are used when different content is displayed for the various languages. There are no length restrictions.	Bills Invoices
Text with value selection	Text for building a set of possible values	These fields are used to collect data for the contents of a drop-down menu. With this, you can define drop-down menus yourself. For more on this, see <i>Using Text with Value Selection</i> on page 29.	Material: Goretex Sympatex Leather
Language- dependent text with value selection	Language- dependent text for building a set of possible values	You use these fields the same way as text with value selection. At the data collected here are language-dependent. For more details, see <i>Languages</i> on page 36 and <i>Using Text with Value Selection</i> on page 29.	Material: Goretex/Goretex Sympatex/Sympate x Leder/Leather
Integer	Integer		255

Table 6: Overview	of the variable	types for e	entry fields
	or the variable	types ioi v	sincity inclus

Туре	Meaning	Use	Example
Decimal number	Floating-point decimal numbers		15.23
Yes/No	Logical variable	Option button. At this point, the user makes a Yes or No decision.	Option button <i>Visibility</i>
Money	A fixed-point number with a specific number of decimal places for saving money entries.	Entry field for prices	€21.95
Date	Date fields for days from 01.01.0001 up to 12.31.9999.		12.06.2004
Time	Time field for the hours in the range of 00:00:00 to 23:23:59		11:11
Date and Time	Combination of date and time	Entry fields for exact times. The entry format is defined by the current country setting. For Germany, the format is DD.MM.YYYYThh:mm:ss.	
File	File name	You can use this field to assign a file to a product.	Productinfo.pdf
Language- dependent file	File name	Use this attribute to make a separate file available for each language.	Productinfo_en.pdf Productinfo_en.pdf

## Using Text with Value Selection

As described in Table 6, *Text with value selection* and *Language-dependent text with value selection* are variable types for setting up drop-down menus.

The following example demonstrates this:

Let us assume you sell shoes in your shop. Although these shoes are made of various materials, it is always the same materials: Goretex, Sympatex, and leather.

Therefore, you need to create a *Material* attribute for each product of the type *Shoe* and enter the material the shoe is made out of.

Create a product type called *Shoe* (for more on this, see *Product* Types, on page 95) with (for simplicity's sake) a single attribute called *Material* of type *Text with value selection*.

Now enter the values for the drop-down menu. In the first entry field, enter the ID for the first material– Goretex. In the second entry field, enter a name for the material that should be displayed in the shop. When using the type *language-dependent text with value selection*, you would, at this point, enter a display name for every active language since the name displayed is dependent on the language.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

After this, collect the same information for the other materials, Sympatex and leather. See Figure 14.

	ID		Value	Sort Order
Goretex		Goretex		10
Sympatex		Sympatex		20
Leather		Leather		30
				9999

Figure 14: Sample text with value selection – default value entries complete

What is the result of all this prepatory work? Create a new product called *Hiking Shoe*. For more information about creating new products, see chapter *Product* Details on page 77. Create a product number and click **Attributes**. Select a product type *Shoe*. You can then select the material from the drop-down menu.

### Import and Export

Use this function to export data from the shop system to use in other systems or to edit further. You can also go in the other direction and import prepared data into the shop system.

In order to complete the import, you need to set the data up in a CSV file. This is a simple text file that contains the individual data for each item. Each piece of data is separated by a semicolon. There is one line per item in the file. Exporting data from the system generates a CSV file.

We recommend using an export file as a template. If no item for the type that you want to import exists in the shop, create one. After this, start the export and this will produce an example of a formatted file as a template. Now take the data sets in the export file and use them as template entries for importing data.

Use the respective context menu for starting the import and export functions. Click the **Import and Export** link.

#### Export

The page is used for both functions. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ltem type		Drop-down menu	
Formatting	Regional settings for the data format in the export file, for example, for currency or time information.	Drop-down menu	
Languages	Setting that defines which fields relevant for a language will be exported.	Drop-down menu	

#### Table 7: Parameters for exporting product data

When you have finished modifying all the settings, start the export process by clicking **Export**. The process finishes up by prompting you to save the file or to open it immediately.

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

#### Import

In order to import, you first need to create a corresponding CSV file. It is especially important to use the correct field names in the header. You can see an example of this in Figure 15.

	Δ	B		
	Class [Class]	Alias [Alias]	IsBundleProduc [IsBundleProduct] ListPrice/EUR/gross [ListPrice/EUR/gross	] ListPrice/USD/gross [ListPrice/USD/gross] SelectedVariation
2		s_3200705005	69.95	69.95
2 3		vs_3202112018	0	
4		de_3206199010	0 26.95	26.95
5 6		ht_0801099030	0 14.95	14.95
		hm_0100401001	0 16.95	16.95
7		lt_0401107001	0 72.95	72.95
8		cg_0100504001	0 22.95	22.95
9	Tent	eg_1000111010	0 339.95	339.95
10	Tent	wb_1003111010	0 259.95	259.95
11	Tent	nf_1005104010	0 284.95	284.95
12	Jacket	ho_4040701007	0 215.95	215.95 Color~Size
13	Shoe	md_49412090	0 189.95	189.95
14	Shoe	md_4941209060	0 189.95	189.95 USSize
15	Shoe	md_49417110115	0 169.95	169.95 USSize
		md_49417110120	0 169.95	169.95 USSize
17		de_3203104010	0 99.95	99.95
10	Í			

Figure 15: Field names in the header of the import file

The field names in the header have of two parts, the name and the ID. The name corresponds to the name of the fields in the product detail views. You can modify this information if necessary. The internal names (IDs) are enclosed in square brackets and may **not** be changed.

You need to set parameters at the beginning of the import. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 8: Parameters for in	porting product data
----------------------------	----------------------

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Item Type		Drop-down menu	
Formatting	For defining how numbers, currency, and time formats are interpreted during the import. The formats in the import file must match the formatting setting for the import.	Drop-down menu	
Languages	Irrelevant for the import.	Drop-down menu	
Import File	Enter the name of the import file along with the path information in this field. You can also <b>Browse</b> to the file and enter the information in that manner.	Entry field, alphanumeric	C:\temp\import.csv

When all the parameters have been set correctly, start the import by clicking Import. If problems occur during import, you will get the corresponding message.

# 4. Settings

## Shop Status

## General

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 9: Fields for ger	ieral shup status		
Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Created on	Creation date of the online shop	Display	Monday, April 25, 2005
Link to Home Page		Display	
The shop is open/closed	Depending on the option selected, the shop is available to your customers on the Internet.	Option button	
Shop Name	This name is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Milestones
Shop Closed Message	Language-dependent information displayed to the customer if the shop is closed. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text field, alphanumeric	<h3>Short technical break</h3>

Table 9: Fields for general shop status	Table 9:	Fields	for general	shop status
---	----------	--------	-------------	-------------

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## Optimization

The shop pages that your customers see contain both static and dynamic content. Dynamic content is data that is only read from the database and inserted into the page right before the Web page is displayed. This includes data about prices, descriptions, and so on.

Reading and inserting the data right before it is displayed ensures that current values are always displayed.

However, accessing the database and inserting the data into the Web page costs time, time which is required to build the Web page itself. The more dynamic data needed to be processed, the longer it takes to display the shop page.

Your customers expect up-to-date pages with fast loading times. For this reason, it is a good idea to find the optimum setting between current content and quicker availability of the page.

One way to do this is to save the pages which have content that does not change. After being requested, these pages are read into cache and then displayed. They do not have to be built first. This means that these pages can be displayed immediately. These pages have an enormous speed advantage over pages that cannot be cached.

On the *Optimization* page, define which page types are to be updated at which intervals. The important thing for you to remember while doing this is how often you change and update the data on these pages.

For example, if you change the prices of your products weekly, you only need to regenerate the pages which display prices only every week after the price change. During the rest of the week, these pages can be loaded and displayed from cache.

The same applies for stock data. When inventory levels are evaluated for display in the shop, the optimization must be set in such a way that when stock level changes during the order process, the corresponding pages are updated. For more on this, see *Stock* on page 69.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

If you need to make extensive changes to data and information, you can update all the pages at one time. To do this, click **Update Immediately**.

**Note:** If you make changes to shop data while in the administration area and these changes are not immediately visible in the shop, check the period of validity setting. If necessary, click *Update Immediately*.

Remember the following:

- Optimization does not apply to non-registered users.
- If you open a page from the administration area via *View in Shop* or open the home page from the administrator menu, you will see always the current page.
- Customers will not see the changes until after the administrator has started the update or it has been performed automatically.
- The speed advantage gained by the optimization is effective for the customers. However, for you as the merchant, there are no effects.

We recommend that, while setting up the shop, you select the *Always update* option in order to apply frequent changes immediately. When your shop goes into *Live* operation, activate the maximum periods of validity possible for your shop.

### Utilization

Your shop is based on a shop type that makes certain functions available. Some of the functions are limited according to the type of shop. This means that you can manage only a certain number of products or create only a limited number of pages (Categories/Freely Designable Pages) in this shop. The *Utilization* page gives you an overview of how many of your resources you have left.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Symbol	Meaning
✓	The function has been activated for the shop.
×	The function has been not activated for the shop.
	The status bar shows how much of a limited function is being utilized. A red bar indicates that the limit has been reached.

#### Table 10: Legend for resource symbols

**Note:** Contact your provider when you reach a utilization limit or when you would like to use functions that have not yet been released for your shop.

## Shop Address

This shop address data are used when the address information for the shop is made public. For example, this is the sender address on invoices and packing slips. Furthermore, this information is used when address information needs to be submitted to third party systems, for example, Pangora or Kelkoo.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## **User Management**

You can authorize other users to access the administration area of your shop by giving them their own signon account. These users have the same rights and can use the same functions.

The table lists all the administrators who are authorized to access your administration area. Except for your own entry, all the other user names are shown as links which let you access the details of the individual administrators. The link for the user name of the administrator who is currently signed on is not active as a link. You can edit your own data in the administrator menu. For more on this, see *Data Management for Signed-in Users* - Administrator Menu on page 17.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

#### Table 11: Status symbols for users

S	ymbol	Meaning
2		The user is active, that is, he is authorized to sign into the administration area.
		The user is not active, that is, he is not authorized to sign into the administration area.

You can run batch processing actions to process the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

### Creating a New User

To create a new user, enter the name of the user in the left entry field in the last table row. This is then used as the user name for signing on. In the second field, enter a display name for the user. This is displayed in the administrator menu. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Click the user name to open the details page. Edit the data as described in *User Details* - General below.

**Note:** For new users, the system assigns the default password *admin*. Either you or the new user must enter this as the old password in order to create a new password.

### User Details - General

You can edit the data the same way as described in *Data Management for Signed-in Users* - Administrator Menu on page 17. However, there are two exceptions:

- Use the *Sign in allowed* field to set whether an administrator can sign in and have access to the administration area.
- You can remove a user. To do this, click the **Delete** button.

# **Country Settings**

## **Regional Settings**

*Regional Settings* have priority over the settings for display language as well as over the number and date formats.

The extent to how data formats can differ from each other is demonstrated in the comparison between German and English (UK/USA) country settings in Table 12.

#### Table 12: Regional settings for Germany and the USA

	German (de_DE)	English (en_UK)	English (en_US)
Date	15.10.04	15/10/04	10-15-04 or 10/15/04
	15.10.2004	15/10/2004	10-15-2004 or 10/15/2004
	15. Oktober 2004	15 <sup>th</sup> October 2004	October 15, 2004
	Freitag, 15. Oktober 2004	Friday 15 <sup>th</sup> October 2004	Friday, October 15, 2004
Currency	29,95 €	£29.95	\$29.95
Decimal number	29,95	29.95	29.95
	2.999,95	2,999.95	2,999.95

Change the default settings or add another country. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** The regional settings listed in the drop-down menu are part of the installation. If you need additional settings, contact your provider.

### Languages

In order to switch languages, activate the drop-down menu and select the language you want. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Caution</u>: You must make sure you create and manage all the text for the product data and its associated contents in the relevant languages. As soon as you have activated an additional language, check all the objects (products, customers, categories, and so on) for language-dependent fields and enter the translations. If the text data does not exist in the corresponding languages, it cannot be displayed.

<u>Note</u>: Note that for language-dependent fields, a translation can no longer be displayed if you delete the corresponding language.

<u>Note</u>: The languages listed are part of the installation. If you need additional languages, contact your provider.

## Currencies

When the shop page is opened, the prices are displayed in the currency that is associated with the regional settings. This is the currency that is marked as default.

The customers can select the currency they want to use for their orders by using the currency drop-down menu. This remains active until a different language is explicitly selected or the session ends. In addition, the currency can no longer be changed once a product has been placed in the shopping basket.
In order to make a new currency available, click the drop-down menu at the end of the table, and select the desired currency. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Note</u>: The currencies listed are part of the installation. If you need additional currencies, contact your provider.

*Caution:* Products, which are not priced in a particular currency cannot be put in the shopping basket or even ordered with that currency. The same applies for shipping methods.

In you want to offer products at no charge, such as pamphlets or brochures, enter the price as 0.00.

### **Special Case - Swiss Francs**

Due to the fact that in Switzerland, the smallest unit of currency is 5 Rappen, all the prices must be rounded to increments of 5 Rappen, that is, every price must end with 5 or 0.

As soon as you enter prices in the currency *Swiss Francs*, the system checks the entry and rounds the price whenever necessary.

# **E-mail Settings**

You have the option of sending the customer various notification, confirmation, and informational e-mail messages.

## E-mail Settings - General

On this page, define the sender settings that are used to send e-mail messages. You can also enter an extended address that will be more descriptive for the customer. This extended address consists of not only the simple e-mail address; you can also enter a descriptive name. While doing so, be sure to keep to the following formatting conventions:

name <emailaddress>

<u>Note</u>: This address is the default sender for all e-mail messages. It is used when no other address has been entered for the individual e-mail messages.

You can also enter a signature which is inserted at the end of each e-mail message. You can also format the signature with HTML tags. For more information about formatting, see *Using HTML Commands in Entry* Fields on page 26 and *WYS/WYG* Editor on page 26.

Create a signature for every active language. You can also make the format of the signature conform to country-specific conventions.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## E-mail Settings - Events

Define which actions or events cause e-mail messages to be automatically sent to the customers.

In the table, all the events that initiate the sending of an e-mail message are listed. In addition to the default events, the total number of events available also depends on the functions activated for your shop. Use the check box in the last column to define whether e-mail messages should be sent automatically for an event or not.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

You can configure every e-mail message separately. To do so, click the name of the event to go to the associated e-mail details.

## Event E-mail - Details

The detail page for most of the event e-mail is basically the same. For special cases, see below.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Active	When the <i>Yes</i> option is selected, the e- mail message is sent when this event is triggered.	Option button	
Sender Address	Special sender for the respective event. This entry overwrites the default sender in the general e-mail settings.		info@epages.de
CC Address	Recipient of a copy of the e-mail; this address is displayed with the other recipients.	Entry field, alphanumeric	system@epages.de
BCC Address	Recipient of a copy of the e-mail; this address is not displayed with the other recipients (blind copy).	Entry field, alphanumeric	<u>admin@epages.de</u>
Subject	A short note about the contents.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Welcome to the shop
Text	Notification text that is displayed as language-dependent text. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text, alphanumeric	You have successfully registered

Table 13: Fields for event e-mail messages

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The fields in e-mail messages are used mainly as follows:

Data from data -Order data	base, relate	ed to the ev		
-Order data			ent:	
-Registration da -Delivery data -etc.	ita			
This data will b	e created a	utomaticall	y	
<text></text>				

Figure 16: Using details in the e-mail message

### Special Case: E-mail messages for the merchant

There are also event e-mail messages that the system sends only to the merchants:

- Warning for stock level reached
- Product Sold Out
- T-Pay Incorrect Settings

For these e-mail messages, there is an additional entry field in the general properties called the *Recipient* field.

#### Special Case: Contact e-mail for the customer

Your customer can contact you via a contact form in the shop. To enable this, you need to place the link to this contact form in the navigation elements on your shop page. See *Navigation* on page 133.

The customer can open, fill out, and send a form. This information is sent to you by e-mail.

For these e-mail messages, there is an additional entry field in the general properties labeled the *Recipient* field. Enter the e-mail address for the recipient of the customer e-mail messages here.

Note: The contact form is only displayed in the shop if the recipient address has been entered.

# **Tax Calculation**

## Tax Matrix

Your provider will supply you with a table with the most widely used tax classes in the main tax areas. This is called the tax matrix.

The standard default entries are marked with an asterisk (\*).

If necessary, you can also change the sales tax rates for the individual tax classes.

To do this, click **Customize**. As soon as you click **Customize**, you will be able to set new tax areas and tax classes.

<u>Note</u>: After doing this, you can no longer return to the default tax matrix. Once you have made the decision to customize this tax matrix for your shop, you are required to manage the tax settings yourself. Otherwise, your provider keeps the tax matrix up-to-date.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## Tax Areas

<u>Note:</u> You cannot modify the tax areas until you first click **Customize** on the tax matrix page. See *Tax* Matrix above.

	ID		Tax Areas	Default
EU		EU-Land Deutsch		۲
		EU country English		
non	EU	kein EU-Land Deutsch		0
		no EU country English		
		Deutsch		
		English		
	ted Topics hopping Basket and	Order Settings		

Figure 17: Tax areas

Enter a name to create a new tax area. Then enter the display names into the language-dependent fields in the next column. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Note: When a new customer registers, this *preset* tax area will always be suggested as the default.

### Tax Classes

**Note:** You cannot modify the tax areas until you first click **Customize** on the tax matrix page. See *Tax* Matrix on page 40.

Enter a name to create a new tax class. After this, enter the display names into the language-dependent fields in the next column. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** The *preset* tax class will be set as the default when new products are added.

## Tax Model

Depending on the business model, you need to set your prices in the shop so that they can be displayed with or without sales tax.

*Caution:* When you sell to end consumers, all your prices must be displayed as retail prices!

Select the option that should be valid for your shop. Save your entries by clicking Save.

<u>Note</u>: This setting affects the price that you have entered for your products. If you have set the wholesale price here, also define wholesale prices for the products.

<u>Caution</u>: If a price has already been successfully set and you switch between retail and wholesale, the price cannot be automatically recalculated! If you switch to Wholesale Price, you only have input fields for the wholesale price in the product details. If you switch to Net Price, you can only set or edit retail prices.

# Shipping and Payment

# **Shipping Methods**

The system provides three calculation models as the basis for the shipping methods:

Free Shipping: This model describes methods without additional costs, that is, you offer the customer free shipping and delivery, for example.
Flat Rate: At this point and independent of the scope of the delivery, the various suppliers specify set delivery prices. This means you can create a separate shipping method for each supplier who offers flat rate delivery.
Free Shipping Over: Using the free shipping over model, you offer your customers *Free Shipping and Delivery* when they order above a preset volume.

All the methods for the shipping of your goods defined so far are listed under shipping methods. The individual symbols have the following meanings:

### Table 14: Status of the shipping methods

Symbol	Meaning
9	Shipping method visible.
9	Shipping method not visible.

If you would like to change the set values for one of the methods, click its name in the table.

You can define this sequence using the sorting key in the last column of the table. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

You can use batch processing commands to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

## **Creating New Shipping Methods**

To create a new shipping method, enter a name for the method. After this, click the drop-down menu for the calculation models and select a suitable one. See Figure 18.

hipping Methods  🔶 🛛 Paym	ent Methods C	Dependencies	Shipping Options	Deferre	d Payment	
Shipping Meth	od	Calculati	on Model	Visible	Default	Sort Order
Postal Service	F	ree Shipping Ove	er	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	۲	10
Express Delivery	F	lat Rate		<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	0	20
🔲 🧐 Customer Pickup	F	ree Shipping		<b>~</b>	0	30
DHL Save (Select Entry) V E		(Select Entry) (Select Entry) Free Shipping Flat Rate Free Shipping Ov	er	_		9999

Figure 18: Creating a new shipping method

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Depending on the calculation model you select, you need to enter general and special parameters. To do so, click the name of the shipping method.

#### **General Properties for Shipping Methods**

The properties and parameters for the individual shipping methods can be differentiated according to their underlying calculation model. The general parameters are the same for **all** shipping methods.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	PickupByCustomer
Visible		Option button	
Default	Definition of the default method	Option button	
Name	Name used to display the method. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Pick-up
Note	Additional information for the shipping method. The contents are displayed to the customer during the order process. Printed on the packing slip.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Please check in at the shipping office.

Table 15: General parameters for all shipping methods

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

#### **Fixed Price Shipping Methods**

You need to enter special parameters for this shipping method. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Tax Class	Selection for the tax rate that applies to this method	Drop-down menu	Normal
Shipping Price	Price for this shipping method	Entry field, numeric	12.00 € \$14.00

Table 16: Special fields for shipping with a flat rate model

Note that you need to enter prices for every currency that you have made visible in your Web shop. The fields for this are visible, depending on the currency settings.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### Shipping Methods with Free Shipping Limits

For this shipping method, you need to enter special parameters. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 17: Special fields	for free shipping and deliver	ry above a certain order amount
Table 1/1 opecial netas	ioi nee sinpping and deave	y above a certain order amount

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Tax Class	Selection for the tax rate that applies to this method	Drop-down menu	Normal
Shipping price	Price for this shipping method.	Entry field, numeric	8,00€ \$10.00
Free above an order value	The order limit, at which shipping is free	Entry field, numeric	100.00 € \$130.00
Price <i>Free above an</i> <i>order value</i> refers to 	At this point, define how the order value is calculated, above which shipping is free of charge to the customer.	Drop-down menu	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The field *Price "Free above an order value" refers to...* has the following options:

Table 18: Options for calculating shipping price
--

Action	Comment
Products	Price limit refers to the total of the product prices in the shopping basket.
	Price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products and the values of the coupons in the shopping basket.
	Price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products and the values of the coupons in the shopping basket and the shopping basket discount.

<u>Caution</u>: Note that the name and shipping price field are displayed dependent on your defined currencies and languages. If you make changes to the currencies and languages, check how it affects your shipping method data!

## Payment Methods

Seven calculation models build a basis for the payment methods you create:

- At no charge: The customer incurs no further costs.
- Flat Rate: Here you can pass costs on to the customer, for example, payment fees for cash on delivery.
- Free Shipping Over: Here you can define payment methods where the customer pays the delivery costs or not depending on the order volume.

Direct Debit:	As with <i>At no charge</i> , the customer incurs no additional costs at this point. This model makes sure that during the ordering process in the shop, the customer's bank information is requested.
Credit Card:	User this method to offer your customers all the credit cards you accept and manually process.
WorldPay:	When using this method, the customer is routed to the secure WorldPay system for payment. That is where data collection and the actual transaction take place. For more information, see <i>Payment Method with</i> WorldPay on page 50 and <i>WorldPay</i> on page 161.
T-Pay:	To select the payment method and make the transaction itself, the customer is forwarded to the T-Com payment system where the transaction is completed. For more details, see <i>Payment Method via</i> T-Pay on page 54 and <i>T-Pay</i> on page 163.

The icon in front of the ID indicates the status of a method and also indicates its visibility. The individual symbols have the following meanings:

#### Table 19: Status of payment methods

Symbol	Meaning
-	Payment method visible
118	Payment method not visible

The sequence of the entries in the table is defined by the sorting key in the last column. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

If you click the ID of a payment method, you open the detail view and can edit the method parameters.

You can use batch processing actions to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

### **Creating New Payment Methods**

If you would like to create a new payment method, enter a name for the method. Then click the drop-down menu in the next column and select a calculation model to base the method on.

hipp	oing Methods 🛛 Payment Methods 🛸 Depe	endencies	Shipping Options	Deferre	d Payment	
	Payment Method	Calc	ulation Model	Visible	Default	Sort Order
	🖥 Invoice	No Add. (	Cost	<b>~</b>	۲	10
	🖥 Cash in Advance	No Add. (	Cost		0	20
	🖥 Cash on Delivery	No Add. (	Cost	<b>~</b>	0	30
	🖥 Cash	No Add. (	Cost		0	40
	🖥 Direct Debit Authorization	Direct De	bit	<b>~</b>	0	50
	🖥 Credit Card	Direct Cre	edit Card		0	60
	🖶 Credit Card via WorldPay	WorldPay	/		0	70
	T-Pay Save (Select Entry) V Execute	Direct De	ntry) Cost a pping Over abit edit Card			9999

Figure 19: Creating a new payment method

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Click the name to edit the details.

#### **General Properties for Payment Methods**

The general properties are for **all** payment methods are the same, independent of the calculation model.

Payment Methods ↔	Invoice		
General 🗭			
ID	Invoice		
Calculation Model	No Add. Cost		
Visible	💿 Yes 🔘 No		
Default	📀 Yes 🔘 No		
Discount	0 % 🔄		
Name	Rechnung	Deutsch	
	Invoice	English	
Note			Oeutsch
			<u> </u>
			- English
			English
Save	Delete		

Figure 20: Parameters for payment method without additional costs

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 20: General para	meters for all payment methods		
Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	Invoice
Visible		Option button	
Default	Definition of the default method	Option button	
Discount	Percentage discount for the payment method.	Entry field, numeric	10
Name	Name used to display the method. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Invoice
Note	Additional information about the shipping method. The contents are displayed to the customer during the order process. Printed on the packing slip.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Please check in at the shipping office.

#### Table 20: General parameters for all payment methods

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** You can use the *Note* field to record bank information. This is very useful when the *Payment in advance* method is used and the customer needs to know where to transfer the money so that the goods can be delivered.

#### **Direct Debit Payment Methods**

Using the calculation model *Direct Debit* directly effects the order process. If the customer chooses the payment method *Direct Debit*, he will need to fill out a form with his account information for a direct debit before the end of the order process. See Figure 21.

	nes ped to achieve your goals!				
MILESTONES	ped to achieve your goals!	TANKS STATE			
		» Home Page » Contact information » Contact » Terms and Conditions » Custo	omer Infor	mation » Shop	oping Basket
Categories	🦼 Shopping Baske	t 🔹 👩 Address 🛸 🗮 Direct Debit 🛸 🧑 Confirmation	Sh	opping Basket	t
Jackets	-		1	Deuter Hy	74.95 €
Shoes		Please confirm your entries. You can correct these on their respective pages by clicking the order steps		Deuter Te	26.95 €
Backpacks	listed above. If all entries	listed above. If all entries are correct, click "Complete Order".			-10.19€
Tents				ount	
Equipment	Direct Debit			al Service	10.00 €
	Account Holder *	Max Musterman	Tota	al Amount	101.71 (
Product Search	Account Number *	1234567890			how Basket
	Bank Code *	13245678		+ 51104	V Addresses
+ Advanced Search	Bank Name *	Ein Kreditinstitut	Ma	ix Mustermani	n
			+ I	ly Account	
Special Offers	* Required Fields		+ :	Sign out	
Black Bear Gemini \$29.95	Cancel	🜩 Next	Cu	rrency Selecti	on
Sector			€ (	Euro)	
MILESTONES	By clicking the button "F	inalize Order", we will send you an e-mail confirming receipt of your order and	\$ (	US Dollar)	

Figure 21: Account information request for the calculation model *Direct Debit* 

**Note:** The data are checked for completeness, however not for exactness; no validation is performed as to whether the account indicated exists or has sufficient funds.

### **Fixed Price Payment Methods**

In addition to the general properties, the following special parameters apply to the *Flat Rate* payment method. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Tax Class		Drop-down menu	no example
Prices for Payment	Price for this payment method per	Entry field, numeric	4,00€
	available currency		\$5.00

Table 21: Parameters for payment methods with flat rate

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Payment Methods with Exemption Limits

In addition to the general properties, the following special parameters apply to the *Flat Rate* payment method. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Tax Class		Drop-down menu	Normal
Base Price	Price for this payment method per available currency.	Entry field, numeric	10,00 € \$15.00
Limit	The order limit, at which the payment costs are waived.	Entry field, numeric	100,00€ \$150.00
Price for the limit	At this point, define how the order value is calculated, above which payment is free of charge to the customer.	Drop-down menu	

Table 22: Parameters for payment methods with free shipping over

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products, the values of the coupons in the shopping basket, shopping basket discount, and shipping costs.

Table 23: Options f	for calcu	lating sł	hipping pric	:e

Option	Comment
Products	Price limit refers to the total of the product prices in the shopping basket.
Products, coupons	Price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products and the values of the coupons in the shopping basket.
Products, coupons, shopping basket discount	Price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products and the values of the coupons in the shopping basket and the shopping basket discount.
Products, coupons, shopping basket discount, shipping costs	Price limit refers to the total of the prices of the products, the values of the coupons in the shopping basket, shopping basket discount, and shipping costs:

### Payment Method with Credit Card, Manual

You can also set up payment per credit card for your customers. You process the transaction manually. At this point, you can set up all the credit cards that you would like to accept from your customers.

In addition to the general properties, the following special settings apply to the *Credit Card, manual* payment method.

Cr	edit Cards					
	Credit Card	Credit Card Identification Code (CIC)	Issue Number	Issue Date	Visible	Sort Order
	🛑 MasterCard	Entry optional	No entry	No entry	<b>~</b>	10
	🛑 Visa	Entry mandatory	No entry	Entry optional	<b>V</b>	20
	Solo	Entry mandatory	Entry mandatory	Entry mandatory		30
	Switch	Entry mandatory	Entry mandatory	Entry mandatory		40
		(Select Entry)	(Select Entry) 💙	(Select Entry)		9999
					_	_

Figure 22: Overview of credit cards with manual processing

The page is divided into two sections: a table with the list of accepted credit cards and an area for selecting the credit card logos to be displayed in the shop.

The table shows all the credit cards that you accept in your shop and manually process. In addition to the name of the card, you also see the additional card information that the customers must enter during the order process.

For more information, see *Attribute* Types page 28.For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

You can define new credit cards by entering the name of the card and selecting the corresponding options from the drop-down menus. The individual fields have the following meanings:

Column	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Credit Card	Name of the Credit Card	Entry field, alphanumeric	MasterCard
Credit Card Identification Code (CIC)	A specific set of numbers, usually in the signature field on the back side of the credit card.	Drop-down menu	
Issue Number	Special issue numbers on some credit cards	Drop-down menu	
Issue Date	Issue date on some credit cards	Drop-down menu	

Table 24: Input parameters for credit cards

The following options with the corresponding effects in the shop are listed in the drop-down menus:

Table 25: Options in the drop-down menus	
--	--

Option	Meaning
Entry mandatory	Customer must enter the required value.
Entry optional	Customer can enter the required value if desired.
No entry	The field is not displayed.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

The example in Figure 23 shows a possible entry mask for credit card information during the order process.

	» Home Page » Contact information » Contact » Terms and Conditions » Cust	omer Information » Shop	ping Basket
Categories	🦪 Shopping Basket 👒 🚱 Address 👒 🧮 Credit Card 🔉 🧑 Confirmation	Shopping Basket	t
Jackets		1 Leatherma	\$72.9
Shoes	Please confirm your entries. You can correct these on their respective pages by clicking the order	Total Amount	\$72.9
Backpacks	steps listed above. If all entries are correct, click "Finalize Order".		Show Baske
Tents	Credit Card	+ Shov	w Addresse
Equipment	Credit Card * Visa	Shop-Administra	tor
Product Search	Card Number *	+ My Account + Sign out	
+ Advanced Search	Expiration Date *	Currency Selecti	on
+ Advanced Search		€ (Euro)	
Special Offers	Credit Card   kdentification Code *  Credit Card Identification Code	\$ (US Dollar)	
Black Bear Gemini \$29.95	Identification Code * Credit Card Identification Code Card Holder *		
( actor	* Required Fields		

Figure 23: Entering credit card information by the customer

In order to visually tell your customers which credit cards you accept in your shop, in the bottom section of the page in Figure 22 select the credit card logos to be displayed. Click **Credit Card Logos** and select the check boxes for the corresponding cards. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The prerequisite for display in the shop is the positioning of the associated navigation element *Logos for accepted credit cards (Credit Card, Manual)* on your shop page. For more information, see the *Design* chapter *Navigation* in the on page 133 section.

#### Payment Method with WorldPay

The basics about working with WorldPay can be found in the chapter *WorldPay* on page 161. In addition to the general properties, the following special parameters apply to the *Worldpay* payment method.

General Settings 🛸			
. Register at WorldPay			
. To your WorldPay Adm	inistration		
Data for configuring the	WorldPay installation		
Installation ID		<b>4</b> )	
Callback URL	http://pdomin.jena.epages.o	de/epages/Store.storefront//?	
	ObjectPath=/Shops/DemoSh	op&ChangeAction=PaymentCallb	ackWorldPay&ChangeAction=BlockMonito
Callback Password			
3. Settings for Payment Pr	rocessing		
For entries for payment	<ul> <li>Go to the WorldPay Serv</li> </ul>	rer	
	O Embed the form in the s	hop (use iFrame)	
Transaction is finalized	Manually in the Wo	rldPay Administration ⊻	
Operational Mode	Test mode-OK	*	
Activate Your WorldPa	y Account		
5. Select credit cards			
Show the accepted credit of	ards in the shop		
📃 Visa	Mastercard	Eurocard	American Express
Diners	JCB	Solo	Switch
Laser	🔄 Visa Delta	Visa Electron	
Related Topics			

Figure 24: Special WorldPay parameters

The set-up for parameters and settings corresponds to the general process when preparing and configuring the WorldPay payment method.

#### 1. Register at WorldPay

Click this link to register as a merchant with WorldPay. After registration is complete, you will receive an installation ID. Enter this installation ID in the *Installation ID* field on the page in Figure 24.

### 2. To your WorldPay administration

This link takes you to your WorldPay administration area where you can process your WorldPay data and orders.

You need to set a few parameters in the WorldPay administration so that the data exchange between the WorldPay system and your shop occurs correctly. To do this, open the *Configuration Options* in your WorldPay administration. See Figure 25. In the *Callback URL* field, enter the Internet address that is displayed in Figure 24 into the field with the same name.

#### Settings

FuturePay callback Enabled? (Requires standard Callback enabled)       Image: Callback response?         Use callback response?       Image: Callback suspended?         Callback failure count       2         Callback Failure Alert email address       Image: Callback data to failure email?         FuturePay daily reports?       Image: Confirm:	Use default: [ Use default: [ Use default: ]
Use callback response?     Image: Callback suspended?       Callback failure count     2       Callback Failure Alert email address     Image: Callback failure Alert email address	Use default: [
Use callback response? Callback suspended? Callback failure count	Use default: [
Use callback response?	
	Use default: [ Use default: [
	Use default: [
Callback URL http://whitelinux.epages.de/epage	Use default: [

Figure 25: Entering the callback URL and the callback password on WorldPay

At the same time, enter a password in the field *Callback password*, which you should also enter in the *Callback password* field in Figure 24. When data is transmitted, both entries are compared to each other and the transaction is only continued if both passwords match.

### 3. Settings for payment processing

These setting options need to be specified in your contract with WorldPay.

Your customers are forwarded to the WorldPay system to enter their payment information. Use the option *For entries for payment* to define how your customers will see these pages. If the *Go to the WorldPay Server* option has been selected, the customer is forwarded completely to the WorldPay system. After the information has been entered, the customer is forwarded back to your shop.

If you have selected the option *Embed the form in the shop (using iFrame)*, the WorldPay pages are integrated into the shop display:



Figure 26: WorldPay page, embedded in the shop page

The disadvantage of this layout is the relatively small display area in which the WorldPay pages are displayed. Therefore we recommend the option *Go to the WorldPay Server*. However, you can also modify the WorldPay page in your WorldPay administration so that it fits in the available area.

In the field *Finalize Transaction*, you determine how the transaction is be finalized and when the payment is booked from the customer account. For more details, see *Finalizing the Transaction with WorldPay* on page 162.

Before you release the payment method for your customers, you need to test the process to make sure it functions correctly. To do this, you can select the corresponding mode in the *Operational Mode* field:

Test mode-OK	The transaction data are not validated in WorldPay but otherwise processed normally. With this, you can perform positive test runs. WorldPay sends its responses with the comment that these are test runs and not real transactions.
Test mode-Error	With this, you simulate transactions that are sent back by WorldPay as invalid. In this way, you can perform negative test runs.
Live	This is the setting for "real" transactions that customers carry out with WorldPay using your shop.

**Note:** As soon as you have sufficiently tested the payment method and have released it for your customers, set the operational mode to *Live*, otherwise the invoiced sums cannot be booked from your customers.

#### 4. Activating your account

In order to offer your customers the WorldPay payment method as well as to advertise the WorldPay logo on your shop page, you need to have your shop accepted and your account activated by WorldPay. To do so, click the **Activate Your WorldPay Account** link and fill out the displayed form.

### 5. Selecting credit cards

After activation by WorldPay, you are allowed to display the WorldPay logo in your shop. In addition, you can also display the logos of the credit cards for which you have a contract with WorldPay.

There is a navigation element for displaying the WorldPay logo together with the credit card logos, *Logos for accepted credit cards*. For more information about using navigation elements, see *Navigation* on page 133.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

For more information about transactions with WorldPay, see *WorldPay* on page 161.

#### Payment Method via T-Pay

Die Grundlagen für die Arbeit mit T-Pay lesen Sie im Kapitel *T-Pay*, Seite 163. Für Zahlungsmethode mit *T-Pay* gelten neben den allgemeinen Eigenschaften weitere, spezielle Parameter.

Payment Methods + T-Pay			
General Settings 📚			
General Settings			
1. Register with T-Pay			
2. Set up your T-Pay account			
MerchantID	1		
ShopID	0815		
MerchantSecrets	KHASSNBVNJXU978987242	2/100220026502450	
Operational Mode	Live	×	
Operational Mode	Live		
3. Selection of payment variations			
MicroMoney	⊙ Yes ○ No		
Telephone bill from Deutsche	Yes ○ No		
Telekom			
Direct Debit	⊙ Yes ○ No		
Credit Card	Yes ○ No		
	Ŭ Ŭ		
4. Select credit cards			
Show the accepted credit cards in	the shop		
Visa	<ul> <li>Mastercard</li> </ul>	✓ Eurocard	American Express
Diners	JCB		
Related Topics			
E-Mail Event "T-Pay - Inco Enter recipient address to	be able to receive detailed r	eports in case of an error	
Add navigation element "S		Cards (T-Pay)" to display	

Abbildung 27: Spezielle Einstellungen für T-Pay

#### 1. Bei T-Pay registrieren

Save

Sollten Sie sich noch nicht bei T-Pay angemeldet haben, können Sie unter Punkt 1 den Link Bei T-Pay registrieren nutzen, um die Registrierung aufzurufen.

#### 2. Ihr T-Pay-Konto einrichten

Im Verlauf des Registrierungsprozesses bei T-Com erhalten Sie die MerchantID, eine ShopID und einen Code *MerchantSecrets*. Diese Daten tragen Sie in die entsprechend gleichlautenden Felder im Punkt 2 ein. Zusätzlich legen Sie in diesem Punkt Ihren Betriebsmodus fest. Bevor Sie die Bezahlmethode *T-Pay* für Ihren Shop freischalten, empfehlen wir einen Testbetrieb. Stellen Sie dazu den Betriebsmodus entweder auf *Test* oder *Test mit Limitierungsabfrage* ein. In diesem Modus werden die Transaktionen, außer für Micromoney, nicht berechnet. Sind alle Test erfolgreich, nehmen Sie mit dem Support von T-Pay Kontakt auf und lassen Ihren Shop freischalten. Danach ändern Sie den Betriebsmodus auf *Live* und schalten die Zahlungsmethode für Ihre Kunden sichtbar.

**Achtung:** Schalten Sie die Zahlungsmethode *T-Pay* erst nach Absprache mit dem Support von T-Pay *live*. Anderenfalls treten für Sie und Ihre Kunden Fehler im Transaktionsprozess mit T-Pay auf.

#### 3. Auswahl der Bezahlvarianten

Im Punkt 3 legen Sie fest, welche der T-Com-spezifischen Bezahlvarianten Sie Ihren Kunden anbieten. Diese Varianten werden Ihren Kunden dann auf der T-Com-Bezahlseite angeboten, siehe Abbildung 28.

lez	ahlen			<b>E</b>	
	Bezahiva	irianten	Anmeldung	Bezahlen	Quittung
	nmen bei T-Pay				
en	Dank, dass Sie sich für T-Pay entschieden haben. Bitte v	vählen Sie nun aus, w	ie Sie bezahlen möchten	c	
0	Per Telekom Rechnung				
	Einfach und komfortabel - Bezahlen Sie mit Ihrer näch	sten Telekom Rechnu	ing.	Telekon	
0	Per MicroMoney				
	Anonym und kinderleicht - Bezahlen Sie mit MicroMon T-Pay.	ey - der Guthabenkarte	von	HicroMon	ey
0	Per Lastschrift				
	Lastschrift - Einfach und bequem.			Lastschrif	ft
	Per Kreditkarte				
	Einfach und bequem - Bezahlen Sie mit Ihrer Kreditka	rte.		Kreditkar	te

Abbildung 28: Auswahl der Bezahlvariante bei T-Pay

#### 4. Auswahl der Kreditkarten

Wenn Sie Kreditkarten über T-Pay akzeptieren, können Sie die Symbole dieser Karten im Shop anzeigen. Markieren Sie die Kontrollkästchen der betreffenden Kreditkarten.

**Hinweis:** Die Kreditkartensymbole werden über ein Navigationselement auf der Shopseite platziert und angezeigt. Zur Arbeit mit Navigationselementen lesen Sie *Navigation*, Seite 133.

Sichern Sie alle Eingaben mit Speichern.

**Achtung:** Sollten Sie im Punkt 2 falsche Daten eingetragen haben, wird bei der Transaktion ein E-Mail-Ereignis ausgelöst. Dadurch wird Ihnen eine E-Mail mit der Fehlerangabe gesandt. Dafür müssen Sie in den E-Mail-Einstellungen für das E-Mail-Ereignis *T-Pay – Fehlerhafte Einstellungen* eine entsprechende Empfängeradresse eintragen. Zu E-Mail-Ereignissen lesen Sie *E-mail* Settings, Seite 37.

## Dependencies

Here you can define which payment method applies to which shipping method, that is, which payment method the customer can select when he chooses a shipping method.

If you would like to activate a payment method for a specific shipping method, select the corresponding check box. If you clear the selection, the customer will not be able to select this payment method and relate it to the shipping method.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

**Note:** Newly created payment methods are assigned default shipping methods. At the same time, new shipping methods are assigned to all payment methods. Clear the selections for the combinations that you do not offer.

*Caution:* Make sure that at least one combination is activated. Otherwise, no orders can be filled in the shop.

## **Shipping Options**

You can offer your customers a service in the connection with the order via shipping options. This is where you can advertise services such as gift wrapping or something similar. The customer can select this service during the order process and add it to his shopping basket.

hipping and Payment Methods Settings Shipping Methods Payment Methods Dependencies Shipping Options 🐑 Deferred Payment							
Display Name in Shopping     Bestellung als Geschenk versenden     Deutsch       Basket (i)     Gift wrap order     English							
	Shipping option		Visible	Sort Order			
🔲 🥵 Gift wrap			<b>V</b>	10			
□ 🥵 Greeting card				20			
9999							
Save Delete	•						

Figure 29: List of the shipping options you have created

In the entry fields above the table, enter the name of the link that forwards your customers to the current shipping options. See Figure 30.

#### Settings

#### Shipping and Payment

Ients	Quantity	Name	UP	Discount	ТР		
Equipment	1 Piece	Leatherman Tool Survival	\$72.95		\$72.95	0	Shop-Administrator
Product Search	Subtotal				\$72.95		+ My Account
	Shipping Method	Postal Service			\$0.00		+ Sign out
+ Advanced Search	Payment Method	Credit Card					Currency Selection € (Euro)
Special Offers	Total Amount				\$72.95		\$ (US Dollar)
Black Bear Gemini	Value Added Tax	x: standard (16 %)			\$10.06		-
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0 \$169.95	2 Update	Delete Basket			Check C	ut	
Mag Lite Mini \$16.95	→ Gift wrap orde	r					
Do you have any questions? Call our toll-free number at 0 800 / 123 456. We are happy to help.	containing the det	tton "Finalize Order", we will send you an e-ma ails of your order. Your order represents an o when we send e-mail confirmation to you that oduct to you.	ffer to us t	o purchase	a produc		
Note: All prices include the legal	-	t to cancel your order within seven working da	ays of deliv	very (startin	g the day	after	

Figure 30: Link to the shipping options in the shop

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

#### Table 26: Status for the shipping options

Symbo	ol	Meaning
<b>9</b>		The shipping option is visible to the customer and can be selected.
9		The shipping option is not visible to the customer and cannot be selected.

Use the ID to access the details. The options are displayed in the table in the same order as in the shop. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

Define new shipping options by entering an ID in the entry field in the last table row. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Shipping Options: Details - General

You can edit the general details for the shipping options on the page in Figure 31.

Settings
Settings

Shipping Options 🔸 🕻 General 👰 Select			
ID Visible	Greeting card		
English Name		Translation	Deutsch 💌
Greeting card			
Description		<b>.</b>	
Dekivery with an addi	uonai greeting card		
Price	250.00 € € \$3.00 \$		
Tax Class	standard 💌		
Show Entry Field	• Yes • No •	_	

Figure 31: General details for shipping options

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	Greeting card
Visible		Option button	
Name	Name used to display the option. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Greeting card
Description	Description and information displayed for customers. This is language- dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Delivery of the order together with a greeting card. Formulate your own personalized message
Price	Price for this payment method per available currency.	Entry field, numeric	3.00€
Tax Class		Drop-down menu	
Show Entry Field	Display of an entry field for the shipping option. In this field, the customer can enter text that is submitted together with the shipping option.	Option button	

Table 27: Fields for generation	al details for shipping options

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

# Shipping Options: Details - Selecting

In addition to the basic settings, you can define which shipping option variations your customers can select.

		Name	Image	Size	Preview (63%)
<u>P</u>	Geburtstagskarte	Deutsch	CardExample1.gif	30 KB	
	Birthday card	English			Viele
	Geburtstagskarte	Deutsch	CardExample2.gif	31 KB	(âmhiße
	Birthday card	English			VUT INTERV
2	Grußkarte	Deutsch	CardExample3.gif	35 KB	
	Greeting card	English	······································		A Constant of the second second
	Name	File or Link			- and the second se
			Browse		

Figure 32: Overview of the variations for a shipping option

The customer can select from these variations in the shop. You can describe each variant with a name and perhaps a short explanation and/or image.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

If you have uploaded an image for a selection, the image file name will appear as a link in the *Image* column. When you click the link, the image is displayed to the right in the preview window. If you would like to view the image in its original size, click the display in the preview window.

To create a new option, enter a name for it in the first entry field in the last table row. If you would like to upload an image for it, enter the name and path of the image file in the next entry field. Or you can also click **Browse** to find the file and then enter the name in the entry field.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

**Note:** When you provide an image for a selection, you need to immediately indicate and upload the file when you create the selection.

Shipping options and their variations are available to customers in the shopping basket. The customer can select one variation. See Figure 33.



Figure 33: Selecting shipping options

Note: The selected option applies to the entire shopping basket and not for individual products.

## **Deferred Payment**

You can offer your shop customers the deferred payment option for the payment methods *Direct Debit*, *Credit Card, manual*, and *WorldPay*.

Shipping Methods	Payment Me	thods De	pendencies	Shipping Option	ns Deferre	ed Payment 🧃	2	
Currency	€ ⊻							
		Interest Rate for Monthly Payments						
Minimum Amount				12	18	24	36	48
200.00€	3 %	3.5 %	%	5 %	%	%	%	%
1,000.00€	%	%	%	%	%	6 %	%	%
10,000.00€	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	75 %
E	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%

Figure 34: Settings for deferred payment

You have the option of defining different interest rates for various durations, starting with a minimum amount. The durations (in months) that your customers can select are defined in the table. You can create a deferred payment table per currency.

To set up or edit deferred payment, first select the currency for which the installments should be defined. Then, in the *Minimum Amount* column, enter the amount from which you would like to make deferred payments available for your customers. After this, set the interest rates for the individual durations. In the entry fields for the durations for which you do not offer monthly payments, do not enter a value.

<u>Note</u>: For interest rates, simply enter the annual interest rate; the system calculates the monthly amounts.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

You need to activate the payment scheduling for the payment methods for which deferred payment is available. The payment methods available for this are *Direct Debit*, *Credit Card, manual*, and *WorldPay*.

As soon as a customer has reached the minimum order amount which qualifies for deferred payment and selects a corresponding payment method, the option of financing is offered. See Figure 35.

On the financing page, the customer sees the financing applicable for the amount in his shopping basket. He can then select whether he would like to make deferred payments and if so, for how long:

We're equipped	d to achieve	your goals!					
MILESTONES							
		» Home P	age » Contact inform	ation » Contact » Term	and Conditions » Custo	mer Information » Sho	pping Basket
Categories	a She	opping Basket 🛛 » 🏫	Address » 🐴 F	inancing 🛛 » 🔁 Direct	Debit	Shopping Baske	et
Jackets		1 Eureka EL					
Shoes		Please confirm your entries. You can correct these on their respective pages by clicking the order steps Total Amount 339.95€					
Backpacks	listed ab	listed above. If all entries are correct, click "Finalize Order".  + Show Bask					
Tents	Financing	Financing of: 339.95 €.					
Equipment	Finar	ncing	Max Musterman	in			
Product Search	0	No Deferred Payment				+ My Account	
		Duration	Interest	Monthly Rate	Total Amount	+ Sign out	
•	0	3 Months	3%	113.88 €	341.64 €	Currency Select	ion
+ Advanced Search	$\odot$	6 Months	3.5%	57.24€	343.44 €		1011
Special Offers	0	12 Months	5%	29.10€	349.20 €	€ (Euro) \$ (US Dollar)	
Black Bear Gemini		ncel			⇒ Next		

Figure 35: Selecting financing variations

In the order information summary, the financing selected is displayed one more time:

		» Home Pa	ige » Contact inf	ormation » Contact	» Terms a	nd Conditio	ins » Custor	ner Information » Sho	pping Basket
Categories	🤿 Shoj	oping Basket 🛛 😽 🥐	🚡 Address 🛛 »	Financing >	> 🔁 Dire	ct Debit		Shopping Baske	t
Jackets								1 Eureka El	339.95 €
Shoes		firm your entries. Yo d above. If all entries :			e pages by	clicking the	order	Direct Debit	3.49€
Backpacks	steps liste	above. If all entries	are correct, click	Finalize order .				Authorization	
Tents	Billing Ad			Shipping Addre				Total Amount	343.44€
Equipment	Blumenwe	Max Mustermann g 42 Istadt (Thüringen)		Herr Helmut Muste Tulpen weg 2 01234 Neustadt (1					Show Basket w Addresses
Product Search	Deutschlar	nd		Deutschland				Max Musterman	n
	m.mustern	ann@epages.de		h.mustermann@e	pages.de			+ My Account	
+ Advanced Search	Quantity		Name		UP	Discount	ТР	→ Sign out	
Special Offers	1 Piece	Eureka El Capitan IV	•		339.95€		339.95€	Currency Select	ion
-	Subtotal						339.95€	€ (Euro)	
Black Bear Gemini 29.95€	Shipping Method	Postal Service					0.00€	\$ (US Dollar)	
ALLES TONES	Payment Method	Direct Debit Authori: Duration Installment Amount	6 Months				3.49€		
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0 169.95€			Max Mustermann 1234567890 13245678 Ein Kreditinstitut	1					
Mag Lite Mini 16.95€		Account Number Bank Code Bank Name							
Do you have any questions?	Tax Area	EU country							
Call our toll-free number at 0 800 / 123 456.	Total Am						343.44€		
We are happy to help.	Value Ad	ded Tax: normal (16 %	6)				47.37 €		
Note: All prices include the legal VAT and do not include shipping		amount will be booked							

Figure 36: View of the financing in the order summary

In the *Payment Method* line, in addition to the payment rate parameters, the additional amount that the customer must pay for using this payment method is indicated. In our example, this is  $\leq 1.99$ . This is the difference of the total amount and the subtotal:

341.94 - 339.95 = 1.99. The total amount is calculated based on the financing model selected. Refer to the table in Figure 35.

The installments are calculated according to the following formula:

$$R = \frac{P \cdot q^{Z} \cdot (q-1)}{q^{Z} - 1} (q = 1 + \frac{InterestRate}{12 \cdot 100} with \ regular \ monthly \ payments)$$

Here, Z is the duration in months and P the order value in the currency indicated.

Our example in Figure 36 results in P = € 339.95, Z=6, interest=2%:

$$q = 1 + \frac{2}{12 \cdot 100} = 1.00167$$

$$\mathsf{R}=\frac{339,95€.1,00167^{6}.(1,00167-1)}{1,00167^{6}-1}=56.99€.$$

# **Customer Settings**

## **Customer Groups**

In *Customer Groups*, you can create different groups to assign your customers to.

Such groups are a good way to offer customers various forms of price reductions (discounts, and so on) or services (for example, newsletters, and so on).

To create a customer group, enter the name of the group. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Customers are initially assigned to certain customer groups both when they register and when they order without registering. You decide which groups they are assigned to by using the *Default* option button in the table.

Only merchants can change and update a customer's customer group. This is done in the customer administration area. See *Customer Details – General -* Address on page 107 ff.

## Registration

In order to customize offers, prices, and services for your customers, you need your customers' personal information.

You need to ask your customers for the information necessary to perform these actions. The simplest way to get this information is to set up a form that the customer fills out when registering in your shop.

There are two types of customer attributes: the system attributes and the attributes you define yourself. The system attributes are created by default; you can use them but you cannot change them. If you would like to request addition information from your customers, you can define special attributes. See Customer Attributes on page 66. In the *New Registration* area, set which attributes will be displayed and requested on the registration form. Use the check boxes in the *Visible* column to select which attributes should be visible or not. This determines whether a particular attribute will be displayed on the registration form and can be completed by the customer. In addition, you can set whether the customer is required to complete the field. To do this, select the check box in the *Mandatory* column.

Since registered users always need a user name and password to be identified in the system, the *Sign In* and *Password* fields are by default visible and marked as required fields.

The *Customers without Registration* area is for requesting data from unregistered customers. These customers need to at least indicate a delivery and billing address. You can activate the mandatory fields in the same way as in the *Registration* area, that is, by selecting the check boxes in the *Visible* and *Mandatory* columns.

Billing and shipping addresses do not always have to be identical. You can set the required entry fields in the Shipping Address *area in the table. You can also select the applicable check boxes in order to define which fields in the form the customers are required to complete.* 

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Note</u>: The system can only send order confirmations and other system-generated e-mail messages to the customer if you require the *E-mail* field.

## Countries

You have the option of making the selection of a country for an address easier and faster. You can set up a selection of countries with a default country selection representing the country where most of your customers reside.

**Note:** Note that you must guarantee the order processing and shipping for all the countries you include in your list. Only include those countries in your list for which you can deliver under the given conditions.

You can define the sequence using the sorting key in the last column of the table. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

If you would like to add a country to your shop country list, select this country from the drop-down menu.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Sign In

Activating the first option *Sign into the shop* requires that your customers first sign in. This means that only registered customers with a sign in may enter and browse in your shop. New customers can only access the shop after you configure this option in your administration area. This is only allowed in a B2B business model.

For the second *Identify returning customer* option, you can give your registered customers the opportunity to connect quickly to your Web site without having to sign in again. If this option is active, a cookie containing the customer's sign in information is saved on the customer's computer. The next time the shop address is opened, it automatically requests the customer's sign in data from the cookie. If this

information is correct, the customer is immediately sign in without having to actually go through the sign in procedure.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

*Caution:* Automatic sign in only functions if customers allow cookies to be stored on their computer. Otherwise, the sign in information cannot be stored and then read.

## **Customer Attributes**

Here you can create your own attributes for your customers if the current attributes are insufficient for your needs; for more information, see *Registration* on page 64. This is only available for registered customers.

In the table, you see the list with the attributes you have defined. You can define the sequence using the sorting key in the last column of the table. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25. The order you specify here will be the order in which the attributes are displayed in the registration form.

Click the ID to edit the details of an individual attribute.

*Caution:* When you delete an attribute, all the customer data saved in this attribute are deleted.

### Creating a New Customer Attribute

Enter the ID and name the new attribute. Define the attribute type using the drop-down menu in the *Type* column. For more information, see *Attribute* Types on page 28.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Click the name to define additional details.

### Editing the Details of an Attribute

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	ContactInfo
Туре		Display	
Name	Name used to display the attribute. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	How did you find out about us?
Bubble Help Text	Short explanation of the field contents for the user. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	

#### Table 28: Attribute Detail Fields

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The attributes of type *Text with value selection* and *Language-dependent text with value selection* are exceptions to this. In addition to the general properties, theses attributes have additional values that need to be created and managed. For more on this, see *Using Text with Value Selection* on page 29.

# Shopping Basket and Orders

Shopping Basket and Order Se	ttings
Shopping Basket 👰 Texts	
Action "Add to Shopping Basket"	<ul> <li>Does not change the current view</li> <li>Opens the basket</li> </ul>
Adding a duplicate product	<ul> <li>increases the number in the shopping basket</li> <li>Replaces the product in the basket</li> <li>does not change the number in the shopping basket</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Creates a new line item in the basket</li> </ul>
Minimum Order Value	€ \$
Price for the Minimum Order Valu	e refers to
The total of	Products, coupons, shopping basket discount, shipping and payment costs 💟
Allow selection of tax area	🔿 Yes 💿 No
Confirm Terms and Conditions before ordering	⊙ Yes ○ No
Save	

Figure 37: Shopping basket and order settings

### Add to Basket Action

In the *Add to Basket* feature section, you can determine what happens when a customer "puts" a product in the shopping basket in your shop. If the feature above is active, the customer remains on the page and can continue shopping. If you select *Opens the basket*, the shopping basket is displayed to the customer.

### Adding a Duplicate Product

The second section *Adding a duplicate product* controls what happens to a product in the shopping basket when an identical product is added.

The following options are possible:

Table 29: Options for adding a duplicate product

Option	Comment
Increases the number in the	The number of a product already in the shopping basket increases
shopping basket	accordingly.

Option	Comment
Replaces the product in the basket	When this option is selected, the previous entry for a particular product in the basket is completely overwritten by the new entry of the same product. For example, if you have five of the same product on order in the basket and you select this same product again in the shop, the order for this product in the basket will be reduced again to 1.
Does not change the number in the shopping basket	The entry in the shopping basket remains unchanged.
Create a news line item	Creates a new line item

### Minimum Order Value

You can set a minimum order amount for your shop. This means that every customer must have enough products in their shopping basket to meet this total amount in order to initiate an order.

Use the drop-down menu *Price for the Minimum Order Value refers to ...* to define how the minimum order amount is calculated, whether the minimum order amount is calculated from the total of the product prices, or whether, for example, the shipping and payment costs will also be included in the calculation.

### Allow Tax Area Selection

You can give your customers the option of selecting a tax area during the order process.

**Note:** If you make different tax areas available for selection, remember to take the tax conditions for this area into account. Remember that you as a merchant must check whether the billing address of the customer corresponds with the selected tax area or that the customer is entitled to make purchases in the selected tax area.

## **Confirm Terms and Conditions**

Use this option to require customers to accept your terms and conditions orders before they can place an order.

However, this requires that you make your terms and conditions easily accessible on your page. For more on this, see Terms and Conditions on page 123.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### Texts

Frequently, it is necessary to display order information and supplemental information to the customer in the shop. You have three areas available to you for this purpose, above and beneath the shopping basket as well as on the confirmation page.

For each message, there is language-dependent entry field. All fields are HTML fields. For more information about formatting, see *Using HTML Commands in Entry* Fields on page 26 and *WYS/WYG* Editor on page 26.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

The message texts are displayed in the shop as follows:

		» Home Page » Contact information	» Contact »	Terms and C	Conditions	» Custor	mer Information » Shop	ping Basket
Categories	Shopping Bare	asket » 🎧 Address » 🤯 Confirm	ation				Shopping Basket	
Jackets			99999999999999999999999999999999999999	20020202020	9999999999	NG S S IIIIIII	1 Eureka El	339.95€
Shoes		r entries. You can correct these on their re	spective pages	by clicking	the order st	teps	Total Amount	339.95€
Backpacks	listed above. If all e	entries are correct, click "Finalize Order".						how Basket
Tents	Quantity	Name	UP	Discount	ТР		→ Shov	/ Addresses
Equipment	1 Piece	Eureka El Capitan IV	339.95€		339.95€	0	Max Musterman	1
Product Search	Subtotal				339.95€		+ My Account	
	Shipping Method	Postal Service			0.00€		+ Sign out	
	Payment Method	Invoice 😵					Current Calcut	
→ Advanced Search	Tax Area						Currency Selecti	on
Special Offers	Total Amount	EU country			339.95€		€ (Euro)	
Black Bear Gemini				46.89 €		\$ (US Dollar)		
\$29.95	Value Added Tax: standard (16 %) Order Comments:				40.03 E		💻 📑	
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0 \$169.95								
Mag Lite Mini \$16.95	🥭 Update	🗶 Delete Basket			⇒ Checł	c Out		
to you have any questions?	→ Gift wrap order							
23 456. Ve are happy to help.	containing the deta	on "Finalize Order", we will send you an e- ils of your order. Your order represents an hen we send e-mail confirmation to you that	offer to us to p	urchase a p	roduct whi	ich is		
lote: All prices include the legal /AT and do not include shipping	You have the right	to cancel your order within seven working and return them for a full refund.	days of deliver	y (starting ti	ne day after	r you		

Figure 38: Display of the upper and lower shopping basket text

# **Product Settings**

## Stock

Use this function to adapt the ordering process in the shop when stock levels become critical.

**Note:** The prerequisite for this function is that you fill out the product *Stock Level* field. If this field is not filled, the subsequent options will be ignored.

On this page, you can define how the order process in the shop should continue if an ordered product is no longer available, that is, the stock level is the same or less than zero:

Option	Comment
This remains available without restrictions	The order process is not effected at all, that is, the current stock level is ignored. All the processes continue as if the product were available.

Table 30: Options for a stock level the same or less than "0"

Option	Comment
A notification about possible delivery delay is displayed.	The customer can add the product to his basket with no order restrictions, but will be notified of possible delivery delays. You can formulate the notification message in the corresponding text field yourself. You need to provide a notification for every active language.
It cannot be added to the shopping basket	When this option is selected, products with a stock level of "0" or less can no longer be ordered. You can also display an additional notification message here.
It is set to "Not Visible"	The product is no longer displayed in the shop and cannot be ordered.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Note:</u> If a product reaches the stock level *O* during an order, that is, two items are on stock but four items have been ordered, the shopping basket will only accept the available amount.

<u>Caution</u>: If you increase the stock level in the administration area, the product will not automatically be *Visible* again, since there could be other reasons for it to be *Not Visible*. You must set the product to *Visible* either in the details or using batch processing. See *Products* on page 77.

You can configure the system to notify you as soon as a product has reached the stock level *O*, that is, reached or fallen below the minimum stock level. To do this, configure the corresponding e-mail message in the e-mail settings. For more details, see *E-mail Settings* - Events on page 37.

## Auto Cross Selling

As opposed to manual cross selling (refer to *Product Details* – Cross Selling on page 91), automatic cross selling is based on evaluations of customer buying behavior.

For this, data is collected about how often a product is bought in relation to another product.

<u>Note</u>: This function can slow down the display of products because multiple products have to be read from the database and statistical information managed and evaluated.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Collect Statistics	Activation/deactivation of the automatic collection of product data for automatic cross selling. Statistics collection must be activated in order for the corresponding database to be set up and to provide data for meaningful cross selling suggestions.	Option button	
Visible	Display of cross selling products in the online shop	Option button	
Number of Product Recommendations	Number of cross selling products to be displayed per product. The range of values is from 1 to 20.	Entry field, numeric	5

#### Table 31: Auto cross selling fields

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
	How often a product needs to be sold along with another in order to be displayed as a cross selling product. The range of values is from 1 to 100.	Entry field, numeric	3

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Categories	Categories » Equipment » Camp	pingaz Twister 270	Shopping Basket
Jackets		💘 Campingaz Twister 270	Your shopping basket is empty
Shoes		www.campingaz.rwister.zro	Max Mustermann
Backpacks		A great gas cooker with bayonett connector (easy-clip) and a precise regualtion valve. For Campingaz valve cartridges	+ My Account
Tents		CV 270 and 470 (can be removed for transport). Transport	→ Sign out
Equipment		dimensions: Approx. 11 x 8,5 x 5,5 cm. 220 g.	Currency Selection
Product Search		🔋 In Stock.	€ (Euro)
<u> </u>	State market	\$22.95 / Piece	\$ (US Dollar)
+ Advanced Search		→ Add to Basket	
	and the second sec	+ Add to Shopping List	<b>.</b>
Special Offers		→ Recommend Product	
Black Bear Gemini \$29.95	→ Detail View		
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0	Customers who bought this pr	roduct also bought	
\$169.95 Mag Lite Mini \$16.95		JE -	
o you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 / 23 456. /e are happy to help.		satherman Tool Survival Path finder ZG 72.95 , ∰ \$259.95 , ∰	
ote: All prices include the legal /AT and do not include shipping			

Figure 39: Automatic cross selling display in the shop

# eBay Settings

eBay (www.eBay.com) has become one of the largest sales platforms on the Internet. You can sell your products and services using eBay in addition to your own online shop. This allows you to improve customer awareness and increase your customer base.

## Preparation

In order to integrate eBay with ePages 5, you must understand the functions and rules of the eBay platform. eBay offers this information on the eBay site.

One prerequisite for successfully using the functionality is a valid registration as a seller at eBay. Only after you are registered in the eBay system as a valid seller can you offer items and receive orders in the eBay system.

You can find more information at:

- http://sell.ebay.com/sell
- http://pages.ebay.com/education/index.html
- http://pages.eBay.com/help/index.html

## **General eBay Settings**

On this page, you configure how offers created in eBay affect your stock level. You can configure the system so that quantities are automatically reduced as soon as products are placed in eBay and sold.

The following options are possible:

Option	Comment
	If this option is active, the stock level is reduced immediately when the product is uploaded to eBay as an offer. If the offer ends without a sale, the stock level is changed to reflect this.
	Stock levels are changed when the offer ends and a bidder has won the product.
	The stock level is changed after the bidder finishes the order process in the shop for the product won.

#### Table 32: Options for decreasing stock levels for eBay transactions

You can also define a default rating with additional text on this page that is used if you wish to provide ratings for finalized orders. See *Orders* on page 199.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## eBay Accounts

To create a new account, enter the name of the new account. Then select the eBay country page you want to use from the drop-down menu.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** You can only create an account for a specific country if the language and currency for this country have been created.

**Note:** If you want to create an account for a country that is not included in the selection box, contact your provider.

**Note:** You can only delete accounts for which no offers exist. For accounts that contain at least one offer, the check box is grayed-out and cannot be selected.
To see or change details about individual accounts, click the name of the account.

#### eBay Accounts - Details

You must also use this page to perform or renew your authentication with eBay. See the following chapter about this.

On the lower portion of the page, you must provide the item location. Select a defined value in the dropdown menus *Country* and *Region*. In the lower field *City*, enter the location of your product.

### Authentication

To improve security, eBay has introduced a new authentication mechanism.

You, as the merchant, register with your eBay sign in and password only once with eBay. You then receive something that is called a token from eBay that is saved in the shop system. This token is used to authorize further data transfer with eBay that you perform. It is used, among other things, to upload offers, query offer statuses, and to download sales data.

You cannot exchange any data with eBay with authentication. The authentication has a time limit and must be renewed periodically.

There are two ways to receive a token for an account. Either you can request a new token from eBay or you can use a valid token from another account.

#### **Request Authentication**

Click the **Request Authentication** button. The system verifies whether a connection to eBay can be created and shows the results.

Click the **Request Authentication from eBay** link to request the token. You are then brought to the corresponding eBay page and must sign in with your eBay member name and password. See Figure 40.

	the ser	vice provided by ePages Software GmbH	<u>Hel</u>
New to eBay?	TO	Already an eBay user?	
lf you want to sign in, you'll need to register first.		Sign in if you would like to use ePages Software GmbH on eBay. By doing this, you won't have to share your and password with ePages Software GmbH.	eBay User I
Registration is fast and free.		eBay User ID	
Register >		Forgot your User ID?	
		Password	
		Forgot your password?	
		Sign In Securely >	
		QAccount protection tips   Having problems signing in Be sure the Web site address you see above starts with https://signin.ebay.co.uk/	
		, , , , ,	
Microsoft Passport users cli	ek horo		
Microsoft Passport users cin	<u>an nere</u> .		
<u>out eBay   Announcements  </u>	Register	Safety Centre   Policies   Feedback Forum   Site Map   Help	

Figure 40: Signing in on eBay

eBay verifies the information and generates a token. To transfer this to your shop, eBay requires your permission:

	home	pay   re	gister   service	es   site map			Start new search	Search
en .co.uk	Buy	Sell	My eBay	Community	Help		·	Advanced Search
	Hello, epa	ages! (N	ot you? <u>Sign</u>	<u>in</u> .)				Powered By 🔷 Sun
ePages Softwa	are Gml	bH Au	Ithorisati	on				<u>Help</u>
For your security and	protection,	eBay re	equires your e	explicit consent b	pefore we	transfer any eBay transaction information to	third parties.	
eBay strongly encoura those policies, and is				re GmbH's Term	is and Co	nditions and Privacy Policy as your eBay tran	nsaction information	n is controlled by
By clicking Agree an	nd Continu	e, you a	authorise eBa	y to share your e	Bay tran	saction information with ePages Software Gm	nbH.	
Agree and Cont	tinue >	) <u>Can</u>	cel, return to	ePages Software	<u>e GmbH</u>			
eBay will not share yo	our eBay pa	assword	or credit card	l information with	n ePages	Software GmbH		
About eBay   Announceme	ents   Regis	ster   Sa	fety Centre   I	Policies   Feedba	ack Forun	n   <u>Site Map</u>   <u>Help</u>		
Copyright © 1995-2005 eBa site constitutes acceptance					cs and bra	nds are the property of their respective owners	s. Use of this Web	TRUST C
eBay official time								

Figure 41: Token transfer to your shop

Click the Agree and Continue > button so that the token can be transferred.

As a result, you see a confirmed authentication in your account details. See Figure 42.

Figure 42: Successful authentication

#### Apply Authentication

If you already have an account with valid authentication, you do not have to request the token for a new account through eBay, but can instead use the token from the other account.

Note: The token can only be exchanged between live systems.

### **Templates**

eBay gives you the option of presenting your products using your own design and layout. This is done in your shop administration area by creating your own templates and putting sale items onto eBay using these templates.

If you would like to create a new template, enter a name for the template.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

To edit details for the new or another existing template , click the name. See *Templates – Details* below.

Batch processing actions are available to manage templates. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

### **Templates – Details**

Templates + Defa	ault		
General 👰		 	
Name	Default		
Sale Content			
			Placeholder Name Description Long Description Manufacturer Large Image Medium Image Small Image
Save			

Figure 43: Page designing an eBay sale template

You can change the name of the template here if necessary.

The content of the template itself is managed in the text field *Sale Content*. In this field, you can enter HTML formatting tags or use the WYSIWYG editor. For more information about formatting, see *Using HTML Commands in Entry* Fields on page 26 and *WYS/WYG* Editor on page 26.

<u>Note:</u> Due to security reasons, eBay restricts the use of active page contents such as JavaScript, Flash etc. If you use such elements in your templates, your pages might not display properly on eBay. Therefore, you should check how your sales on eBay are displayed and make the necessary changes to your templates.

The placeholders in the box to the right of the sale text are used to include product data. During placement of the offer, these placeholders are replaced with the data for the current product. To do so, click the name of the placeholder.

Instructions about using these templates with your eBay offers are available in the description of how to use the eBay assistant at *Title* on page 195.

### **Configuring Notification E-mail**

The customer who wins your product in eBay must initiate the actual order process for the product in your shop. To be able to do so, he must be sent an e-mail message explaining what to do next. This e-mail message contains a link. When he clicks this link, he is transferred to the shop, the purchased product is placed in the basket, and from there, the order process continues as if the eBay customer is a normal *shop customer*.

**Note:** The customer can, at this point, add additional products to the shopping basket. You can give him the option of adding the *eBay product* to the shopping basket again. The prerequisite for this is that, you need to go to the *Shopping Basket and Orders* settings for the action *Adding a duplicate product* and select the option *Creates a new line item in the basket*. For more on this, see *Shopping Basket and* Orders on page 67.

#### Settings

You can add your own notes, information, or advertising to the content of the system generated e-mail message containing the link at any time. For further instructions, see *Event E-mail* - Details on page 38.

# 5. Products

Click the product number in the table to see the product details in the working area.

Click the status symbols to the left next to the product number. This opens a new browser window containing the product details.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Symbol	Meaning
<b>W</b>	Sufficient product in stock and visible
<b>8</b>	Product in stock, inventory below minimum level, visible
	Product not in stock, visible
Ū.	Product in stock, not visible
1	Product in stock, inventory below minimum level, not visible
	Product not in stock, not visible
đ	The product is master product, that is, variations of this product have been defined. See <i>Product Details</i> - Variations on page 84.
2	The product is a sub-product, that is, a variation of a master product. For more information on this, see <i>Product Details</i> - Variations on page 84.
0 00	The product is a product bundle, that is, multiple products are combined into one packet. For more on this, see <i>Product</i> Bundles on page 94.

Table 33: Product symbol legend

Click **New Product** in the context menu to create a new product. For more details, refer to the chapter *Creating a New Product* on page 93.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Duplicate	The system creates each copy as a new product with its own unique product number, since every product number may only exist once. Duplicates are created as <i>Not Visible</i> .
Delete all Products	Delete all the products with a single action. Make note of the deletion confirmation settings. See <i>Deletion Confirmation</i> on page 18.

Table 34: Special batch processing actions for product administration

# **Product Details**

## **General Product Details – Prices/Stock**

Here you can collect basic information for your product such as prices, units, manufacturer information, and so on.

Further important parameters include the descriptions on page 80, and special product characteristics on page 81, which you can open via the **Description** and **Attributes** links on the lower part of page.

#### Products

General 👰 Images	5 Categories Va	riations Prices	Cross Selling	eBay		
= Prices / Stock						
Product Number	eg_1000111010	Ma	nufacturer	Eureka		
Visible	⊙ Yes ◯ No	Ma	nufacturer Product			
		No				
List Prices (Gross)	339.95€ €					
	£	We	ight	4.89	Kilogram	💌 🧃
	\$339.95 \$					
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Dir	nensions			
Daily Price Dependent	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🕄	Ler	ngth		mm	
Tax Class		✓ He	ight		mm	
		Wi	dth		mm	
Order Unit	Piece	<b>~</b>				
Price refers to	1 Piece		ck Level	10	Piece	
Minimum Order	1 Piece 🤹	Mir	imum Stock Level	2	Piece	
Quantity				5	5 ()	
Interval	1 Piece 🌖	De	ivery Period	<b>D</b>	Day(s)	
Reference Unit	(Select Entry)	▼ ④				
Amount in Product	<u>(j)</u>					
Description						
Attributes						

Figure 44: General product details-prices/stock

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Product Number	Unique product name, corresponds to the ID for other objects	Entry field, alphanumeric, max. 255 characters.	eg_1000111010
Visible		Option button	
List Price	Price of the product, displayed in the shop. You can enter one price per available currency.	Entry field, currency	339,95 €
Daily Price Dependent		Option button	
Tax Class		Drop-down menu	Normal
Order Unit		Drop-down menu	Item
Price refers to	Enter the number of order units that your price applies to. The order unit you select is displayed	Entry field, numeric	\$1.00
Minimum Order Quantity	If the customer enters a lower amount in the shopping basket, the amount is automatically increased to the minimum order quantity.	Entry field, numeric	1.00

Table 35: Product Detail Fields General Prices/Stock

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Interval	Enter the unit intervals for the minimum order quantity of your product.	Entry field, numeric	1.00
Reference Unit	Information about the comparability of your product. See the example below.	Entry field, numeric and drop-down menu	1 Item
Amount in Product	Number of products or amount of product per reference unit.	Entry field, numeric	1.00
Manufacturer		Entry field, alphanumeric	Eureka
Manufacturer Product No.	Product number of the manufacturer	Entry field, alphanumeric	
Weight		Entry field, numeric and drop-down menu	4.89 kilograms
Dimensions (Length, Height, Width in mm)		Entry fields, numeric	600 mm
Stock Level	You have several options for dealing with products with a stock level of <i>0</i> . See <i>Stock</i> on page 69.	Entry field, numeric	12 items
Minimum Stock Level	Here enter a value for the stock level at which you must order new supplies for the product.	Entry field, numeric	2 items
Delivery Period		Entry field, numeric	3 days

<u>Note:</u> The minimum stock level should not be smaller than the minimum order quantity. This means that when you sell products, for example, as a six-pack, the minimum order quantity should also be six.

What is a reference unit? In order to compare the prices of similar products from different manufacturers, there needs to be a common starting point.

Therefore, according to PangV, a comparable unit of quantity needs to be indicated as the reference unit. For example, pretend you would like to buy some chocolate from a food retailer. A bar of chocolate X from manufacturer A weighs 150 grams and costs  $1.49 \in$ , a bar of chocolate Y from manufacturer B weighs 75 grams and costs  $0.99 \in$ . In order to compare both products more easily, the reference unit for both is declared as 100 g. Based on this, chocolate X costs  $1.10 \in$  per reference unit and chocolate Y costs  $1.32 \in$ . This makes it easy to see without having to calculate which chocolate is more attractively priced.

You should also offer this service to your customers in the Web shop.

The system calculates the reference price using the values in the *List Price, Reference Unit*, and *Amount in Product* fields. So if, for example, you indicate a reference unit of 100 g, you sell your product for  $10.00 \in$  and the product weighs 250 grams, the reference price for 100g is  $4.00 \in$ .

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## **General Product Details – Description**

General 👰 Images Categories Variations Priv	ces Cross Selling eBay
Prices / Stock	
= Description	
	Translation Deutsch 🗸
lame	
Eureka El Capitan IV	Eureka El Capitan IV
Description	<b>.</b>
Dome tent for four persons. 2 doors.	Kuppelzelt für 4 Personen. 2 Türen
Long Description	
Dome tent for four people. Two doors and well-cut apsis enable effective use of space and make the stay comfortable.  Inclued: 16 stakes, cords.	Kuppelzelt für 4 Personen. 2 Türen und gut geschnittene Apsiden schaffen effektive Raumnutzungsmöglichkeiten und machen den Aufenthalt komfortabel.  Lieferumfang: 16 Heringe, Abspannleinen.
Ceywords for Search Engines 🌗	
ent geodetic light weight tent	
Mark as "New" O Yes 💿 No	
orsale 🌖 💿 Yes 🔿 No 🔿 after	12
Notification, if not for sale	
♦ Attributes	

Figure 45: General product details – description

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 36: Product detail	fields - general description
	Serier a coordination

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Name	Name used to display the	e product. This Entry field,	Eureka El Capitan IV
	is language-dependent	alphanumeric	

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Description	Descriptive text for the product, which is displayed in lists, for example. This is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text field, alphanumeric	Dome tent for four persons. 2 doors.
Long Description	A detailed description of the product to displayed in the product detail view. This is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text field, alphanumeric	Dome tent for four persons. 2 doors and well-cut apses create efficient use of space thereby making
Keywords for Search Engines	They are used for internal searches as well as for external search engines.	Entry field, alphanumeric	camping tent geodetic dome light weight
Mark as <i>New</i>	The product is highlighted in the online shop.	Option button	
For sale	Defining whether a product for sale is available or should only be displayed. Use the <i>After</i> option along with the associated date field to automate switching from <i>Not for sale</i> to <i>For sale</i> .	Option button + date field	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### **General Product Details – Attributes**

Here you manage the product attributes defined by the assigned product type. You define these attributes when you assign the product type. For more on this, see *Product* Types on page 95. Now you are in the position to define as many additional attributes for your products as you need.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

You can select another product type from the *Product Type* drop-down menu at any time.

```
<u>Note:</u> As soon as variations of a product exist (see
Product Details - Variations on page 84), the product type assignment can no longer be changed.
```

### Product Details – Images– Images

Here you can upload your prepared images in various sizes, modify the size assignment, and also generate slideshows from individual images.

The program makes four image size formats available, which you can use in various areas in the shop. You probably prefer that the images displayed in the product list be smaller than those in the product detail view.

The formats are *small* (100 pixel x100 pixel), *medium* (200 pixel x 200 pixel), and *large* (original size), as well as a separate format for images for promotional products with a width of 150px.

The small format is for product lists, where a small product image should be shown next to the product name in shop tables. The medium image is used for displaying product details in the shop. You can display a large image to your customers in a separate window.



Figure 46: Product details - images

There are several steps involved in assigning images to products:

First of all, you need to specify the image source. Here you have two options. Either the image files are located on your hard drive and you load them up onto the Web shop server, or you enter the link where the image file is located and the image is read from there whenever it is needed. The prerequisite for this is that the image is publicly available on the Internet or is located on your Web page.

The advantage of this is that, for example, these product images can be used in multiple areas but are managed from a single location.

If you upload image files, you have the option of generating and saving each image in each size format. This is done by *downsizing* the original format into *small, medium*, and *promotional image* sizes and then generating a separate file for each format. Since image size has a significant effect on the loading time of a Web page, you can minimize the loading time by wisely choosing where to use any of the three image formats on your pages.

<u>*Caution:*</u> This cannot be done automatically with every image type. The size of the following file types can be automatically formatted when uploaded: \*.jpg, \*.gif, \*.png, \*.bmp.

<u>Note</u>: This automatic image formatting only works when images are uploaded. The images cannot be generated after the fact with this function.

Linked images can only be used in their original size.

If you would like to upload an image as a file on your server, enter the path in the *File or Link* entry field or use the **Browse** button to look for the file.

<u>Notes</u>: The image symbols behave like option buttons. Click the symbols to select them. A colored symbol has been selected; a gray one is inactive.

You designate an image as a promotional product by clicking the promotional view 🐺 button.

The images marked like this are used for products on the home page of the shop or on the promotional products page. For more on this, see *Promotional* Products on page 125.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Slideshow

If you would like to display a product to your customers, for example, from all sides, you can set up a slideshow and present it in the shop. To do this, upload all the images you need for the slideshow into the image list.

Then click the slideshow symbol for each image to go into the slideshow. See Figure 47.



Figure 47: Assigning a product to a slideshow

You can view the slideshow in the preview area. Use the elements in the lower preview area for navigation. Your customers will see these images displayed similarly in the shop.

You start the slideshow by clicking in an infinite loop. Click iii to stop or end the slideshow. Use the and iii elements to switch either forwards or backwards to the next image.

The images are played back in the sequence in which they are listed in the table.

Note: Slideshows can only be viewed in the shop if JavaScript is allowed in the customer's browser.

### **Product Details - Categories**

You assign a product to a category by selecting the category from the drop-down menu in the last row of the table. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Note: A product should always be assigned to at least one category.

To remove a product from one or more categories, you need to remove the category assignments.

Note: No "Confirm Deletion" window appears since no data is being deleted, only the assignment.

### **Product Details - Variations**

Variations are product groups, whose products are differentiated by only a few attributes. A classical example of this is items of clothing such as T-shirts or a type of jacket. Here the typical distinguishing features are properties such as size and color.

Variation products are completely separate products unto themselves. You can modify any individual property if necessary.

Caution: If you delete the master product, all the derived variation products will be deleted as well.

**Note:** You cannot derive any further variations from a variation product.

#### **Creating a Variation**

The basis for creating variations is product types and the use of the variable type *Text with value selection* or *Language-dependent text with value selection*. The basic descriptions for this are found in chapter *Product* Types on page 95, and in chapter *Using Text with Value Selection* on page 29.

It is a good idea to plan advance how to set up your product groups and then work with special product types per grouping. This means that you first define a product type.

Define the master product as a new product and assign it to a product type, which includes the attribute type *Text with value selection*.

Products + New Product	
General 😥	
Prices / Stock	
⊕ Description	
= Attributes	
Product Type	Translation Deutsch 💌
Basic 🕑 🤄	
Basic Price Jacket	
Shoe	
Browse	Browse
Save	

Figure 48: Variations – creating the master product and assigning the product type

With this, the requirements for creating variation products have been fulfilled. Click the Variations tab.

You will see an overview of the variation attributes that you have defined and their values. Now select the jacket variations you would like to offer. See the example in Figure 49.

eneral Images Categories	Variations 🖗 Prices	Cross Selling eBay	
= Variation Attributes			
Attributes of Product Type Jacket		Value Selection	
Color	Black Extreme red Extreme blue Croft		
Size	▼ s ▼ L ▼ M ▼ XL ▼ XXL		
Save Variation Products			

Figure 49: Variations - value selection

**Note:** As long as a variation product is using a variation value, the check box is deselected, and the selection cannot be removed. If you would like to select this check box again, you need to delete all the variation products that use this value.

According to this example, variation products of type *Jacket* can now be defined with the colors *red* and *blue* and in all sizes.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Click Variations. You now see the page shown in Figure 50.

In the table, there is a column with a drop-down menu for each variation attribute; here the columns *Color* and *Size*. In the drop-down menus for the *Color* and *Size* columns, you find the values that you selected on the *Variation Attributes* page. See Figure 50.

#### Products

General	Images	Categories	Variations	P	rices Cross S	Selling eB	lay		
⊕ Variati	Variation Attributes								
= Variati	= Variation Products								
	Product No.	AV AV Name	Color	۵V	Size ∆⊽	∆⊽ List Price	∆⊽ Stock Level	Default	∆⊽ Sort Orde
			(Select)	*	(Select) 💌				9999
			(Select) (All)		(Select) (All)				
	Extreme red S								
Save (Select Entry) V Extreme blue									

Figure 50: Variations – selecting the variations

You create a variation product as follows:

- Select a color from the *Color* drop-down menu
- Select a size from the *Size* drop-down menu

Save your entries by clicking Save.

The product number is automatically assigned by the system and the name is derived from the master product.

The new variation product inherits all the properties of the master product and also has the definite properties color (for example, *red*) and size (for example *S*).

Note: During the procedure you can also assign a separate product number before you click Save.

In both drop-down menus, there is an entry named *All*. When you select this entry in both fields and click **Save, all** the possible variations are automatically created from the highlighted default values. See Figure 51.

Gener	ral Images Ca	ategories Variations	Prices Cro	ss Selling e	Bay			
⊕ Vai	riation Attributes							
= Vai	riation Products							
	Product No. △♡	Name ∆⊽	Color ∆⊽	Size ∆⊽	∆⊽ List Price	∆⊽ Stock Level	Default	⊼∑ Sort Orde
	<b>I001-0001</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme red	s			۲	10
	<b>1001-0002</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme red	L			0	20
	1001-0003	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme red	м			0	30
	<b>1001-0004</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme red	XL			0	40
	<b>1001-0005</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme red	XXL			0	50
	<b>i 1001-0006</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme blue	S			0	60
	1001-0007	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme blue	L			0	70
	<b>1001-0008</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme blue	м			0	80
	1001-0009	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme blue	XL			0	90
	<b>i 1001-0010</b>	Windstopper Jacket	Extreme blue	XXL			0	100
			(Select) 💙	(Select) 💌				9999
		·					ľ	Number: 10
	Save (Selec	t Entry) 💙 Execute						

Figure 51: Variations – all variations created automatically

### Working with Variations

Master products are indicated in the product list with a a symbol next to the product number.

#### **Variation Products**

Note the following differences:

- The batch process *Duplicate* is not available for variation products.
- In the table, the display sequence can be defined using the sorting key. See also *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.
- -You can set a default setting for the variation products, for example, the variation product, defining which is to be displayed first in the shop. For more about default settings, refer to *Default* Settings on page 22.
- Category assignments made via the master product cannot be removed from the variation product. However, additional assignments to other categories can be made.

To edit the details of variation products, click the product number.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

<u>Note</u>: You have the option of selecting a separate type of variation display for each product type. For more on this, see *Product Type – Details –* Layout on page 99.

#### Variation Products and Cross Selling

In addition to the manual assignment of cross selling products (see *Product Details* – Cross Selling on page 91), cross selling products can also be preset for variation products via the master product.

They are displayed in a defined sequence before the assigned products.

Basically a variation product takes on the cross selling products of the master product without these products being able to be changed. However, you can make changes to the default cross selling products themselves.

To do this, you need to add the corresponding product(s) on variation product level to the list again so that the entries are doubled. Make the desired changes to these new entries and save them. The system then displays the updated data in the shop.

### **Extending Variations Later**

Define a new attribute of type *Text with value selection* and proceed as described under Figure 49. Now the attribute is available to the master product for building variations. Switch to the *Attributes* area in the details of the master product and select a default value for the existing variation products, that is, the first variation. See Figure 52.

roducts + Windstopper Jacket (1001	)		
General 🛞 Images Categories	Variations Prices	Cross Selling	eBay
Prices / Stock			
Description			
= Attributes			
Product Type Jacket		Translation Deutsc	ch 💌
Wholesale Price			
Handbook (i) Bro	wse		Browse
Color			
This attribute is available as a variation.			
Size 4			
This attribute is available as a variation.			
Logo			
(Select Entry) 💙 (Select Entry)			
Without Front			
Back Delete			

Figure 52: Default setting for the first variation value

With this, all the existing variation products receive this value for the new attribute.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

After this, go to the Variation Attributes page.

## **Product Details - Prices**

In addition to the list price of your products that you manage in the general properties (*Prices/Stock*), you can define bulk pricing and discounts for each product, including expiration dates. The prerequisite for creating such price variants are price lists. For more on this, see *Price* Lists on page 99.

General Image	es Categories Variat	ions Prices 🔶 Cros	s Selling eBay					
List Price (Gross ) 199.95 € \$199.95								
= Quantity Discount								
Quantity	(Select Entry)	~	(Select Entry)	~				
Quantity	Bulk Price	Discount	Bulk Price	Discount				
	No Price List	Selected	No Price List	Selected				
Save  * Product is included in this price list.								

Figure 53: Extended product price structure

In the upper part of the page, you see the list price for your product, in the currencies for which you have entered prices.

### **Quantity Discount/Bulk Prices**

In this section, define discounts based on unit numbers. You can define bulk pricing and/or volume discounts. Define the price discounts in the table in Figure 53.

Next to the column in the table where the amount is entered, there are two columns in each of which a price list can be displayed.

<u>Note</u>: The price lists in which the product is already included are marked with an asterisk \*after the name of the price list. This gives you a quick overview of which price lists are associated with the product.

After you have selected a list, the corresponding data is displayed in the column.

In the entry field of the *Amount* column, enter the number of products the customer must buy to receive a lower price. In the *Bulk Price* column, enter the price that should apply to this amount.

You can also enter a discount for your customers if they buy the amount indicated. The discount is calculated in percent.

**Note:** If you offer both bulk pricing and a discount, the bulk price will be charged first and then the discount is subtracted.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

= Quantity Discount												
Quantity		For regular cus	stomers (€) * ⊻ (€)	(Select Entry)	<b>×</b>							
Quantity		ulk Price	Discount	Bulk Price	Discount							
10 Piece	189.95	€€	%									
20 Piece		€	10 %									
30 Piece	159.95	e e	%									
Pi	ece	¢	%	No Price List	Selected							
Save Product is inclu Value Discoun	ded in this price				Save Delete * Product is included in this price list.							

Figure 54: Combined price list

<u>Note</u>: The discount entered last effects all subsequent list entries if no other discounts are entered. To remove the discount on subsequent entries, enter a *O* in the next or the effected discount field.

Remember that you can create customer and customer group-specific price lists. You can define prices for individual customers by entering the price or discount for the amount of *1* and assign only the one customer to the list.

The second price list column lets you edit two price lists at the same time. Select a second list from the drop-down menu via the second price list column.

With this, you have the option of comparing, for example, lists of various currencies or periods of validity to each other.

### Value Discount

In addition to quantity discounts and bulk pricing, you can configure a value discount for each product. With this, you can give your customers a further discount, if they buy so much of a product that the total of the prices exceeds the set limit.

Select the price list for which you would like to set the discounts.

If you would like to create a new discount, enter the limit in the entry field in the *Value* column. In the associated field in the *Discount* column, define the discount as a percentage. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### **Discount Calculation For Product Prices**

Since you can assign more than one discount for each product, the sequence for calculating the discount needs to be defined. The individual discounts are calculated sequentially as follows:

Using the product price to start with, bulk pricing is applied first. This results in a reduced unit price per product for the corresponding number of items. After this, the quantity discount is calculated. The total from bulk pricing minus the quantity discount is compared with the limit for the value discount. If the limit is reached or exceeded, the percentual price discount set for this limit is calculated and applied.

The price reductions are displayed to the customer in the shop:

		Home Page -> Contact	information » Contact » Terms and Conc	ditions » Customer Information	<ul> <li>Your shopping basket is empty</li> </ul>
Categories	Categories	s » Jackets » Bergh	aus Paclite Jacket - Men » Price Co	ncessions	Shopping Basket
Jackets			Berghaus Paclite J	acket - Men	Your shopping basket is empty
Shoes			(Color : Extreme blue ; Size : L)	acket - Men	Max Mustermann
Backpacks			Weatherproof. Small pack size. UI	-	+ My Account
Tents Equipment			Material: Weatherproof. Breathable Gore-Tex Pacific. Out material: 100% Ripstop-Nylon. Reglan sleeves; Sleeves f		→ Sign out
Equipment		Y	perfectly, because the shoulder is		Currency Selection
Product Search	1	Y INS	the arms. 380 g/L.		€ (Euro)
Q			🚦 In Stock.		\$ (US Dollar)
+ Advanced Search				199.95 € / Piece	a (03 Dollar)
		Julia V		+ Price Concessions	<b>•</b>
Special Offers		, , L		- Add to Busket	
Black Bear Gemini		→ Detail View		→ Add to Shopping List → Recommend Product	
29.95€	Intersection of the second sec				
MILESTONES	Quantity	Discount			
Ofto A	Quantity	Bulk Price	Discount		
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0	10 Piece	189.95 €			
169.95€	20 Piece	179.95€			
Mag Lite Mini	30 Piece	159.95 €	5 %		
			bulk prices and percentage discounts are or computing percentage discounts.	given, the respective bulk	
16.95€ o you have any questions?					
16.95€ o you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 /	Value Dis	count			
16.95€ o you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 / 23 456.		Discount			
16.95 € 9 you have any questions? all our tol⊩free number at 0 800 / 23 456. le are happy to help.	Value Dis Value 500.00 €	Discount 3 %			
16.95 € o you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 / 23 456. fe are happy to help. ote: All prices include the legal	Value Dis Value 500.00 € 1,000.00 €	Discount 3 % 5 %			
16.95 € to you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 / 23 456. fe are happy to help. ote: All prices include the legal AT and do not include shipping	Value Dis Value 500.00 €	Discount 3 % 5 %			

Figure 55: Display of the discount for a product

## Product Details – Cross Selling

When using cross selling, additional products are offered in relation to a particular product. These are accessories or related products. The purpose of this offer based on related products is to motivate the customer to buy not only the current product but also the related product.

Manual cross selling is divided into three areas – Accessories, Related Products, and Product Comparison.

### **Cross Selling - Accessories**

Accessories should be products that extend or improve the functionality of the basic product or are necessary to use the product (fuel, batteries, and so on).

= Accessories 2								
	Product Number	Name	Comment	Sort Order				
	🥳 cg_0101004270	Campingaz CV270 Valve Gas Canister	Die passende Gaskartusche für kleine Touren. Deutsch The appropriate gas cartridge for a short trip. English	10				
	🧊 cg_0101104470	Campingaz CV470 Valve Gas Canister	Die passende Gaskartusche für große Touren. The appropriate gas cartridge for a long trip. English	20				
Add Products from Object Tray      Save     Remove Assignment      Related Products 0								
Product Comparison 0								

Figure 56: Cross selling - accessories

The area heading indicates how many products are assigned as accessories. In addition to the product number and the name, you have a *Comment* column. This comment is displayed with the product in the shop. Enter a note or description here why or how this product enhances the current product. A comment field is offered for every language in your shop.

If you would like to place products in the table, you need to add them from the tray. For more information on working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

<u>Note</u>: Clicking **Remove Assignment** only removes the assignment of products to each other. No products are deleted. Therefore, no "Confirm Deletion" window appears.

### **Cross Selling - Related Products**

Products that lend themselves well to being related products are products that enhance the functionally of the base product, that are necessary to use the product, or that make using the product more comfortable, for example, flashlights for tents, and so on.

The functionalities in the table correspond to those in the table for the *Accessories* area. For more information about this, see the chapters *Cross Selling* - Accessories on page 91 the explanations for Figure 56.

### **Cross Selling - Product Comparison**

Product comparison is not so much about offering the customer product enhancements than it is presenting alternatives for the chosen product. You can use this function to show the customer similar products you are offering and therefore show him products for sale that he otherwise may not have ever seen.

The functions in this area also correspond to those of the accessories area. For more explanation, see *Cross Selling* - Accessories on page 91 in Figure 56.

We recommend comparing products of the same type since then these products all have the same attributes, which make it possible at all to generate a meaningful comparison.

Categories	Categories	🔅 » Eureka El Capita	n IV » Product Compa	arison		Shopping Basket
Jackets						Your shopping basket is empty.
Shoes	Name	Eureka El Capitan	Jack Wolfskin	Pathfinder ZG	North Face Tadpole	
Backpacks		IV	Flexibility RT		23	Customer Login
Tents						User Name
Equipment		-		100	10	Password
Product Search	Image					
		~			~	→ Sign in
×						+ Forgot your password?
+ Advanced Search	Price	\$339.95 / Piece	\$499.95 / Piece	\$259.95 / Piece	\$284.95 / Piece	
Special Offers		Delivery Period: 5		Delivery Period: 5	Delivery Period: 5	- Subscribe to Newsletter
Black Bear Gemini	Status	Day(s)	8	Day(s)	Day(s)	Currency Selection
\$29.95						€ (Euro)
Sector NES	Add to	<b>→</b> ∰		+ 🐖	+ 🖗	\$ (US Dollar)
Orrot/	Basket	+ ••••		+ ***	+ 101	<b>— •</b>
	Inner material	Polyester	Nylon	RipStop Nylon	Nylon	
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0	Outer					
\$169.95	material	RipStop Polyester PU	RipStop Polyester PU	RipStop Nylon Si	RipStop Polyester PU	
Mag Lite Mini \$16.95	Pack size	Ø 25 x 60 cm	Ø 30 x 70 cm	Ø 12 x 45 cm	Ø 15 x 50 cm	
	Weight	4.89 kg	10.8 kg	2.02 kg	2.2 kg	
o you have any questions? all our toll-free number at 0 800 /						
23 456.						
e are happy to help.						
ote: All prices include the legal						

Figure 57: Display of the product comparison table

The basis product is displayed first as the item to the left. Beneath the *Add to Basket* line, the attributes of the respective product type are listed.

### **Product Details – eBay**

As soon as you create an eBay offer for a product, this offer is shown in the details of this product. A detailed description of the table with all of the functions and batch processing actions is available in *Offers* on page 193 in the *eBay* chapter.

On this page, you can immediately create a new offer for this product. To do this, click **Create New Offer**. Click the name of the new offer to open the eBay assistant and to enter or change all necessary settings. Working with the eBay assistant is described in *Offer Settings/eBay Assistant* on page 195.

## **Creating a New Product**

You create a new product by clicking the **New Product** link in the context menu for products and entering all the necessary data on the page displayed.

First enter a unique value in the *Product Number* field. A product cannot be saved without a valid number. Repeated numbers are rejected by the system.

After this, enter the additional general product details for prices/stock, description, and attributes. The definite field descriptions can be found in the chapters *General Product Details – Prices/Stock* on page 77; *General Product Details – Description* page 80; *General Product Details – Attributes* page 81.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

*Caution:* Save your changes before you click the tab for entering additional data. Otherwise, the changes will be lost!

<u>Note</u>: Visibility is set to *Not Visible* by default. When all the data has been entered, set the product to *Visible* in order to display it in the shop.

## **Product Bundles**

A product bundle is a packet or set made up of products that belong together and that are then usually offered at a lower price.

Open the corresponding page by clicking the **New Product Bundle** link in the *Products* context menu.

The home page for a new product bundle corresponds to one for "normal" products. This is also the place you first define the most important parameters and then after saving are able to access additional tabs. For more information on this, see *Creating a New Product* on page 93.

Make note of the following exceptions:

You cannot enter any values in the *Stock Level* and *Minimum Stock Level* fields. These values result from the smallest values of each of the individual products.

The *Reference Unit* field and the corresponding *Amount in Product* field are inactive, since the packets are not comparable to other products due to their individual compilation.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

The data are collected and processed in the *Images, Categories, Prices, Cross Selling*, and *eBay* tabs exactly the same way as for standard products. The corresponding explanations for this are found in the chapters *Product Details* – Images– Images on page 81, *Product Details* - Categories on page 83, *Product Details* - Prices on page 89, *Product Details* – Cross Selling on page 91, *Product Details* – eBay on page 93.

### **Associated Products**

You must select and put together the products that make up the packet.

To add more products to the list, you have to add them from the tray. For more information on working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

In the *Quantity* column, you can set the quantity of a product offered in the bundle. Enter the corresponding value in the respective entry field.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### **Information About Bundles**

You should take note of the following information about working with product bundles:

- The stock level and minimum stock level of the bundle are determined by the smallest respective value for the individual products.
- After the order has been placed, the inventory for all the associated components is updated at the same time.
- Only products of the same value-added tax class can be assigned to a bundle.
- The status *Not for sale* is taken into account for bundle products. If one of the bundle products is set to *Not for sale*, the entire bundle cannot be sold.
- During import, the bundles are imported as normal products. The assignments for the individual products are not retained.
- The unit price is calculated by adding the respective list prices of the individual products together. Any price discounts defined in the price lists are not taken into consideration at this point.

## **Product Types**

Product types let you group your products and assign attributes to them.

You can view the details for the individual product types by clicking the link in the *ID* column. Or you can open the details for a product type in a new browser window. To do so, click the symbol in front of the product type ID, 4.

Caution: When you delete a product type, all the products that belong to this type are deleted as well.

### Default Product Type

The first product type created becomes the *Default* product type. This is the "*original type*" on which all the other product types are based.

This means that all the attributes that this product type "owns" are automatically assigned to all the other types which follow. In this way, you can specify attributes that apply to all products.

Note: If you would like no common attributes, simply delete all the default product type attributes.

*Caution:* When you delete an attribute, all the product data contained in this attribute are lost.

### Creating a New Product Type

You create a new product type by entering an ID and a name for the new product type. Enter a name in the second entry field.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## Product Type – General Details

The name is language-dependent; enter a value for every defined language.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## **Product Type – Details – Attributes**

ID	Name	Туре	Visible	Sort Order
PurchasePrice	Wholesale Price	Money		
InstructionManual	Handbook	Language Dependent File		
Color	Color	Language dependent text with value selection	<b>~</b>	10
Size	Size	Text with value selection	<b>V</b>	20
Logo	Logo	Text with value selection		30
		Text		9999

Figure 58: Product types – details - attributes

This is where you manage the attributes. Access the details by clicking the ID.

**Note:** In Figure 58, you see two attributes that cannot be deleted. They are made available by the default product type and can only be edited via this type. See *Default* Product Type on page 95.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### Creating a New Attribute

You create a new attribute by filling out all the entry fields in the last row. See Figure 58. Use the drop-down menu in the *Type* column to set the attribute type. For more information, see *Attribute* Types on page 28.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Now click the ID to enter details; to do this, refer to the next chapter.

### Attribute - Details

Use attribute details to set the display format in the shop.

I	Product types + Tent + Weight							
Í	General 🛸							
	ID	TentWeight						
	Туре	Language Dependent Text						
	Visible	⊙ Yes ◯ No						
	Support HTML Formatting	🔾 Yes 💽 No						
	Name	Gewicht	Deutsch					
		Weight	English					
	Bubble Help Text	Das Gewicht des Zeltes (Reisegewicht)	Deutsch					
		Tent weight	English					
	Save Delete							

Figure 59: Product type – attributes - details

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table	37:	Fields	for	attributes
Tuble	<i>Ji</i> .	ricius	101	attributes

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	TentWeight
Visible		Option button	
Supports HTML formatting.	Text attribute setting, see <i>Attribute</i> Types on page 28. Use this to determine whether the texts that are later entered in the field should be able to be formatted with HTML.	Option button	
Name	Name used to display the attribute. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Weight
Bubble Help Text	Short explanation of the field contents for the user. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Tent weight (travel weight)

**Note:** If you have created an attribute of the type *Text with value selection* or *Language-dependent text with value selection*, you need to edit the possible values in addition to the general details. This is described in detail in the chapter *Using Text with Value Selection* on page 29.

### Attribute - Details - Value Selection

For the attributes *Text with value selection* and *Language-dependent text with value selection*, there is an additional tab which opens the page for entering the default values. See *Using Text with Value Selection* on page 29.

	ID	Valu	e	Sort Order
Black		Schwarz	Deutsch	10
		Black	English	
Extre	meRed	Extrem Rot	Deutsch	20
		Extreme red	English	
Extre	meBlue	Extrem Blau	Deutsch	30
		Extreme blue	English	
Croft		Croft	Deutsch	40
		Croft	English	
			Deutsch	9999
			English	

Figure 60: Page for entering default values

To create new values, enter the ID. In the next field, enter the value.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Product Type – Details – Layout

You can set up a different layout for each product type. You select this layout from a specified set of layout options.

iew oi	Product Deta	ails
	Layout	Description
•		Product display left, expanded product description on the right
		Product display right, detailed product description left
		Product display in wide format over the complete width, detailed product description below
iew of	Variations	
	Layout	Description
	Layout	Description Variations in a list
•	Layout	

Figure 61: Selecting the layout for products and variations

The page is divided into two sections. In the upper section, you see layout variations for the products belonging to a product type. In the lower section, select how the product variations should be displayed as a group.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

If you have a large number of variations of a product, you should use the second layout because then the page will display faster. If there are only a few variations, the first layout is best. Layout 3 is best for just a few variations with different images to be displayed.

## **Price Lists**

You can use price lists to set time limits on the prices for your products as well as set bulk pricing and discounts. You can also define which customers or customer groups to offer special prices to. However, in order to create product price structures, price lists must first be defined. To do this, make a selection from the **Price Lists** context menu.

#### Products

🚡 Milestones	Pri	ice Lists				
2 Shop-Administrator — Sign out	6	General 👰				
		ID	Name	Currency	Valid from	Valid until
Products		RegularCustomer_EUR	For regular customers (€)	€	10/1/04 12:00 AM	10/1/05 12:00 AM
Products     New Product		Q1_Euro	Q1_Euro	€	1/1/05 12:01 AM	1/31/06 11:59 PM
<ul> <li>New Product</li> <li>New Product Bundle</li> </ul>		Q2_Euro	Q2_Euro	¢	4/1/05 12:01 AM	6/30/05 11:59 PM
Product types	_	RegularCustomer_USD	For regular customers (\$)	\$	10/1/04 12:00 AM	10/1/05 12:00 AM
Price Lists				€ 💌	4	
		Save (Select Entry)	Execute	_		
		(Select Entry)	Execute	-		
Basic (3) Favorites		Save (Select Entry)	Execute			
<ul> <li>Basic (3)</li> <li>Favorites</li> <li>Berghaus Paclite Ja</li> </ul>		Save (Select Entry)	Cxecute Cxecute			_
Basic (3) Favorites Berghaus Paclite Ja Campingaz Twister 2			Execute			
Basic (3) Favorites Berghaus Paclite Ja Campingaz Twister 2 eBay Offers		Save (Select Entry)	Execute			
Basic (3) Favorites Berghaus Paclite Ja Campingaz Twister 2 eBay Offers			Execute			
Basic (3) Favorites Berghaus Paclite Ja Campingaz Twister 2 eBay Offers		Save (Select Entry)	Execute			
Basic (3) Favorites Berghaus Paclite Ja Campingaz Twister 2 eBay Offers		Save (Select Entry)	Execute Execute			
<ul> <li>Tray</li> <li>Basic (3)</li> <li>Favorites</li> <li>Berghaus Paclite Ja</li> <li>Campingaz Twister 2</li> <li>eBay Offers</li> <li>History</li> </ul>			Execute			

Figure 62: Price lists

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Table 38: Symbols in the table for price lists

Symbol	Meaning
	Price list is active. The current date lies within the list validity period
	Price list is not active. The current date lies outside of the list validity period

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

### **Creating New Price Lists**

To create a new price list, enter the ID and the name for the list. After this, select the currencies from the currency drop-down menu for which you would like to enter prices. In the last two fields, enter the time frame the price list should remain valid, first the start date, and in the last field, the end date.

<u>Caution</u>: For the start and end date, you also need to enter the time frame next to the date information, otherwise the entry is invalid. Enter the dates in the current language-dependent format. The German format is as follows: TT.MM.JJ SS:MM, for example, 01.01.05 08:15.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Click the ID to enter additional properties.

### Price List Details – General

The individual fields have the following meanings:

#### Table 39: Fields for general price list details

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field,	RegularCustomers_E
		alphanumeric	U
Name	Name used to display the price list.	Entry field,	For regular
	This is language-dependent.	alphanumeric	customers (€)
Valid from		Date field	01.01.06 00:00
Valid until		Date field	30.06.05 23:59

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### Price List Details – Customer Groups

You can set up price lists for target groups. This puts you in the position to offer specific customer groups special prices, which do not apply to your customers in general.

All the defined customer groups are listed in the drop-down menu in the lower part of the table. Select the customer groups for which the price list should be limited.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** Only one price list can be selected for a customer or customer group.

### Price List Details - Customers

You can assign not only customer groups to price lists but also individual customers. In order to assign selected customers, use the tray. See also *Tray* on page 19.

Click the Add customers from tray link.

**Note:** If a customer is directly assigned to a price list, this has a higher priority than if the customer is assigned to a price list from within a customer group. This means that if one price list is selected for a customer and another for a customer group, in which the same customer is a member, the customer-specific list applies to the customer.

**Note:** Only one price list can be selected for a customer or customer group.

## Price List Details - Shopping Basket Discount

Use this function to give your customers and customer groups discounts on their shopping baskets. This lets you define various shopping basket values from which you give certain price discounts.

eneral	Customer Gro	ups	Customers	Shopping Basket Discount	2
Minin	num Amount			Discou	unt
500.0	0€	3	%		
1,000	).00€	5	%		
	€		%		
			_		

Figure 63: Settings for Shopping Basket Discounts

This page lists the discount ranges that you have created for this price list. You can see what percentual reductions you are giving for specific shopping basket values. You can modify percent values, define new discounts, and delete entries.

If you would like to create a new value and give it a discount, enter the shopping basket value in the entry field in the *Minimum Amount* column. In the associated entry field in the *Discount* column, define the discount as a percentage.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Import and Export

You can read a general description about importing and exporting in the chapter *Import and Export* on page 30.

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

## **BMECat-Import**

Der BMECat-Import unterstützt die BMECat-Version 1.2 mit den Transaktionen <T\_NEW\_CATALOG>, <T\_UPDATE\_PRICES>, <T\_UPDATE\_PRODUCTS>.

Die einzelnen Felder haben folgende Bedeutung:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Importdatei	Geben Sie den Pfad direkt ein oder nutzen Sie <b>Durchsuchen</b> , um den Pfad der Datei einzutragen.	Eingabefeld, alphanumerisch	C:\BMECat\BMEcat.x ml
Modus	<i>Prüfen</i> – Die XML-Datei wird auf Syntaxfehler, fehlende Elemente, richtige externe Verweise, auf richtige Einheiten usw. geprüft. <i>Importieren</i> – Die XML-Datei wird komplett geprüft und importiert	Optionsfeld	

Tabelle 40: Felder für BMECat-Import

Steuergebiet	Auswahl des Steuergebietes ist Voraussetzung für die Zuordnung der richtigen Steuerklasse.	Auswahlfeld	
Kataloge ignorieren	Kataloge werden nicht importiert	Kontrollkästchen	
Kataloge sofort sichtbar		Kontrollkästchen	
Produkte sofort sichtbar		Kontrollkästchen	

Sichern Sie alle Eingaben mit Speichern.

<u>**Hinweis:**</u> Beim *Prüfen* wird keine Prüfung auf interne Abhängigkeiten und fehlerfreie Importierbarkeit vorgenommen. Diese Prüfung erfolgt vor dem Importieren.

Im Ergebnis von *Prüfen* und *Importieren* werden Fehler oder Warnungen angezeigt. Warnungen können ignoriert werden, wenn diese als bedeutungslos erachtet werden. Bei Fehlern wird der Import des betreffenden Datensatzes abgebrochen.

Folgende allgemeine Hinweise sind noch zu beachten:

- Merkmalgruppensystem und Klassifikationssysteme werden ignoriert
- Buyer und Supplierangaben werden ignoriert
- Userdefined Extensions werden ignoriert

## **Product Searches**

Products are the most important elements of your shop type. Therefore, the access to individual products or product groups must be uncomplicated and convenient. Not only is catalog management important for this, you also need an easy to use search mask with extensive filter options.

### Product Search in the Administration Area

For you as a merchant, it is important to be able to access not only specific products but also to search for whole groups with the same properties, for example, to check whether a product has fallen below a minimum stock level or for all products of a certain type.

You have access to the product search on every page in the *Products* area. It is always visible in the upper area of the corresponding page.

You can choose between the simple standard search and the advanced product search.

The following buttons are important for searches:



Switch between stock and text search

- Start the search according to the entries in the search fields. You can also start the search with Enter.
- 8

Reset the search. The search mask is emptied and all the entries are deleted from the search fields.

Switch between simple and advanced search.

<u>Note</u>: When you use multiple search fields, remember that the search fields are AND searched by default, that is, a data set must fulfill all the criteria that have been defined in the search fields and not just one of them.

**Note:** The product search also applies to attributes and products set to *Not Visible*.

Both master products as well as variation products are covered by the search. See *Product Details* - Variations on page 84.

### **Searching Text**

The text in the *Product Number* search field is used to search within the product number of the individual articles for matches.

<u>Note</u>: Searching by product number is quicker than searching via the *Text Search* field because, in this case, only one field per data set is evaluated.

Searching with the *Text Search* field includes the following product parameters: *Product Number, Product Name, Manufacturer Name, Manufacturer Product Number, Short Description, Long Description, Key Words for Search Engines*, as well as all the attributes based on the *Text* variable type. For more about variable types, see *Attribute* Types on page 28.

In addition, the fields, in which file names are saved, are also searched. With this, you can also search for the names product images used or attached files such as pdf files, video files, and so on.

Use the *Language* drop-down menu to determine which *Translation Field* will be searched for language-dependent fields.

<u>Note:</u> You can use the placeholder *\**in the text fields for portions of the search text you do not wish to enter or cannot enter. Capitalization is not noted. The system searches for character strings in which the search text appears, regardless of where this is in the target text.

### **Inventory Search**

There are two fields for searching inventory: the Stock Level field and Minimum Stock Level field.

Use the *Stock Level* search field to query the stock levels of individual products. To do this, enter a number.

<u>Note:</u> The search results list, all the products, whose stock level is the same or smaller than the number searched.

If you want to list all the products that have reached a minimum stock level or have already fallen below it, select the *Stock level below minimum* check box.

**Note:** Inventory searches also return variation products and single products. Master products are not included in the search.

### Advanced Product Search

An advanced search is actually a simple search with additional filter options.

Using these fields, you can restrict the search further according to product types and the *Visible | Not Visible* property.

Remember that when using multiple fields, they are AND searched; for more information on this, refer to the corresponding instructions above.

### Product Search in the Shop

The customer has a convenient search function at his disposal to facilitate choosing products in the shop.

<u>Note</u>: The product search mask belongs to the navigation elements. You need to place it on the page according to the page structure of your shop. For more details, see *Navigation* on page 133.

Customers can only search for visible products; for more about visibility, see *Visibility* on page 23.

This search does not include editorial content, for example, such as items or freely designable pages, and so on.

The customer can also choose between a simple and an advanced search.

# 6. Customers

The symbol to the left of the customer number shows the customer's status. See Table 41. The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Symbol	Meaning
&	Customer is active and can sign in.
c.e	Customer is inactive and cannot sign in.
œ	The customer is a registered customer.

Table 41: Customer symbols

To open the detail view for individual customers, click the customer number. You can also open the details in a new browser window. To do this, click the status symbol to the left of the customer number. This is helpful if you wish to work in the original table instead of the detail view without having to rebuild the table (for example, if the table was the result of a search).

If you wish to add a new customer, click **New Customer** and proceed as described in *Creating New Customers* on page 112.

If you wish to change the basic settings for working with customer data, click the **Customer Settings** link. For more on this, see chapter *Customer* Settings on page 64.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

#### Table 42: Special batch processing actions for product administration

Action	Comment
Assign to Customer Group	Simple assignment of multiple customers to a customer group.

*Caution*: If you delete a customer, the customer's orders will also be deleted.

## Customer Details – General - Address

All the attributes listed here can be released for the registration form so that the customer will have to add this information himself when registering.

For more information on releasing the attributes for registration, see *Registration* on page 64.

= Address				
Gender	📀 Male 🔵 Female	Birthday	8/18/70 🌒	
Salutation	Herr	Company	Etwas Unternehmen GmbH	
Title	Prof.	Department	Einkauf	
First Name	Max	Job Title	Leiter Einkauf	
Middle Name	Α.	Web Site Address	www.epages.de	0
Last Name	Mustermann			
		Phone	0123 456 789	
Display Name	Max Mustermann	Business Phone	0123 456 789	
Address Extension		Home Phone	0123 987 654	
Street	Blumenweg 42	Mobile Phone	0123456789	
ZIP / Postal Code /	01234 Neustadt	Fax	0123 456 111	
City				
Country	Deutschland 🕑	Send HTML E-mail	⊙ Yes ○ No	
State	Thüringen	E-Mail 🧐	m.mustermann@epages.de	
		Business E-mail	m.mustermann@epages.de	
		Private E-mail	max@home.de	
Customer Account				
Login				

Figure 64: Customer details - address information

The first page of the customer details is for the administration of all address information. You can use this data to communicate with the customer, extract billing and shipping addresses, and so on.

With the exception of the *Birthday* field, all of the fields are alphanumeric, meaning you can enter any character.

Birthdays must be in the date format, for example, 01.01.2001.

You can have up to three e-mail addresses for each customer. The e-mail fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Send HTML E-mail		Option button	
E-mail	All system-generated e-mail messages related to the customer are sent to this address if the customer is not a registered customer. For more information, refer to chapter <i>Customer Details – General –</i> Sign In on page 110.	Entry field, alphanumeric	m.mustermann@ provider.de
Business E-mail	Business e-mail address of the customer	Entry field, alphanumeric	m.mustermann@ provider.de

#### Table 43: E-mail settings in the address information
Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Private E-mail		Entry field, alphanumeric	max@home.de

# **Customer Details – General - Customer Account**

In the *Customer Account* section, you collect and edit all the data that are important for the customer classification (customer number, customer group) as well as data relevant for accounting and payment transactions. See Figure 65.

Address				
- <u>Customer Account</u>				
Customer Number	1001		Last confirmed	Not yet confirmed 🔓
Customer Group	RegisteredCustomer	*	Internal Note	Dieser Kontakt ist ein
Allow Orders	⊙ Yes ◯ No			Beispielkunde. Alle Angaben sind nicht real.
Account Holder				
Account Number	1234567890			
Bank Code	13245678			
Bank Name	Ein Kreditinstitut			
VAT ID	DE 123 456 789			
	EU country	~		
Bank Name VAT ID Tax Area	DE 123 456 789	~		

Figure 65: Customer details - customer account

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Customer Number	This is a unique number. You can accept the number generated by the system or use your own.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1001
Customer Group	When the customer registers and creates a new account, the customer group you set in the Customer Setting - Customer Groups <i>is</i> <i>set as default.</i> See <i>Customer</i> Groups on page 64.		Regular customer
Allow Orders	Order block for registered customers	Option button	
Account Holder		Entry field, alphanumeric	Max Mustermann

#### Table 44: Fields for the customer account

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Account Number		Entry field, numeric	1234567890
Bank Code	Bank Code	Entry field, numeric	13245678
Bank Name		Entry field, alphanumeric	A bank
VAT ID	VAT identification number - merchants who can deduct VAT receive a separate VAT ID number upon request.	Entry field, alphanumeric	DE 123 456 789
Tax Area		Drop-down menu	EU country
Last confirmed	Date entry for displaying the last time changes were made. Click the symbol ( 🍫 ) to the right next to the field to enter the current date.	Link	
Internal Note	Field for information and notes about the customer. The customer cannot see these notes.	Text field, alphanumeric	This contact is a sample customer

# Customer Details – General – Sign In

Use this page to administer data for customer access rights to your shop:

Customers + Max Mu	ustermann (1001)			
General 📚 Order	5			
Address				
Customer Account	:			
= <u>Login</u>				
Allow sign in	⊙ Yes 🔿 No		Confirmation Question	Wie heißt die Katze meiner Großm
Name	Max Mustermann		ID Confirmation	Nostradamos
User Name	mmustermann		Answer	
Password	S			
Repeat password				
Send HTML E-mail	⊙ Yes ○ No			
E-Mail 🌗	m.mustermann@epages.de	$\otimes$		
Attributes				
Save	Delete			

Figure 66: Customer details - sign in

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Allow sign in	This is where you give the customer the right to access the areas of your shop that require signing in.	Option button	
Name	Display name in the sign in box in the online shop if the customer has signed in.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Max Mustermann
User Name	Sign in name for the online shop	Entry field, alphanumeric	mmustermann
Password	The password can be any length. But the system only evaluates the first eight characters.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Password
Send New Password	If a customer forgets his password or user name, you can send a new password with this function. The system automatically generates the password and sends it to the e-mail address entered in the <i>E-mail</i> field.	Link	
Repeat password	Field for re-entering the password due to security reasons.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Password
Send HTML E-mail		Option button	
E-mail	All system-generated, customer-relevant e- mail messages are sent to the registered customer at this address.	Entry field, alphanumeric	m.mustermann@ provider.de
Confirmation Question	A security mechanism that works together with the confirmation answer to replace a forgotten password.	Entry field, alphanumeric	What is my grandmother's cat's name?
ID Confirmation Answer	The customer enters his answer to the confirmation question here.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Nostradamos

#### Table 45: Sign in fields

**Note:** The e-mail address in the *E-mail* field is always used if the customer is registered. If there is no sign-in information for the customer (he has only ordered, but never registered), the system uses the e-mail address from the *E-mail* field in the *Address* section. See *Customer Details – General* - Address on page 107.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

# **Customer Details – General - Attributes**

The *Attributes* section contains all the attributes that you added in *Customer* Attributes on page 66.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

# **Customer Details - Orders**

In addition to the customer data, you can also list the orders this customer has previously placed. To see the details of an order, click the order ID. A comprehensive description of all the functions relevant to orders can be found in chapter *Orders* on page 143.

# **Creating New Customers**

**Note:** Some customers assume that after they enter the invoice and shipping address while placing the order, they have already become registered customers. If necessary, let your customers know that they must go through the registration process to be saved as a registered customer. One way of doing this is to display an appropriate message during the order process or on the order confirmation page. For more on this, see *Texts* on page 68.

In the context menu, click New Customer. This opens the mask for entering new customers.

Fill out all the fields as described in chapters *Customer Details – General -* Address on page 107 ff.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** You cannot save the new customer data until you have collected a password for the new customer.

## Import and Export

You can read a general description about importing and exporting in the chapter *Import and Export* on page 30.

Customer data has a restriction in that it can only be exported. Importing it is not possible.

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

# Searching for Customers

A search function is available to help you specifically access special customers or customer groups within a large group of customers.

You can choose between a simple search and an advanced search. Each search has a corresponding search mask in which you enter your search terms.

The following buttons are important for searches:

10			
1	-9	Start the search according to the entries in the search fiel	Idc
			iu s

Reset the search. All the entries are deleted from the search fields.

Switch between simple and advanced search.

**Note:** You can use the placeholder *\** in the text fields for portions of the search text you do not wish to enter or cannot enter. Capitalization is not noted. The system searches for character strings in which the search text appears, regardless of where this is in the target text.

**Note:** The search fields are AND searched by default. In other words, a dataset must meet all the criteria defined by the entries in the search fields and not just one of them.

## Simple Search

Here you can search using the fields *Name*, *Customer Number*, and *E-mail*. Enter the search term and click

## Advanced Search

With the advanced search mask, you can set up complex filters for a very granular search.

Street ZIP / Po Code /				Purcha Time f	frame	EUR € 💉	
Custom Login	ner Group (All)		<b>V</b>	Produc Time f	frame	12 - 12	
stome	rs						
stomer General		er ∆⊽	Name	۵V	Country ∆⊽	Customer Group	ΔV
General	1	er ∆⊽	Name	۵V	Country ∆⊽ Deutschland	Customer Group RegisteredCustomer	۵V
General	Customer Numb	∍er ∆⊽		۵⊽			۵V
General	Customer Numb	er AV	🔗 Max Mustermann	∆⊽	Deutschland	RegisteredCustomer	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\

Figure 67: Advanced search mask

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Search field	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Name	Search in the <i>Display Name</i> field.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Pattern
Customer Number		Entry field, alphanumeric	100
E-mail	Search the <i>E-mail</i> field. This address is used for all system e-mail messages such as order confirmations, new passwords, and so on.	Entry field, alphanumeric	@provider.de
Street	Search the <i>Street</i> field.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Flower Way
ZIP / Postal Code / City	Search in the <i>ZIP / Postal Code</i> and <i>City</i> fields.	Entry field, alphanumeric	99 Neust
Customer Group		Drop-down menu	

Table 46: Search fields in the advanced search mask

Search field	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Sign In		Entry field, alphanumeric	Mmuster
Purchase Volume	Search by the customer's total purchase volume. This lists all the customers with a purchase volume that is <b>greater</b> than the amount you enter here.	Entry field, numeric	499.00€
Time frame	Query of the amount of time to create a certain purchase volume. In the first field, enter the start date; in the second field, enter the end date. Click the 📴 symbol to insert the current date.	Date field	10/05/2004
Product Number	Search for customers, who have bought the same product.	Entry field, alphanumeric	de_3201212002
Time frame	Search for customers, who bought the same product during a specific time frame. See <i>Time Frame</i> for <i>Purchase Volume</i> .	Date field	10/05/2004

**Note:** When you enter a date for a time frame search, the system assumes that the time is 0:00 A.M.

Fill out all of the search fields you need and click 🔍 to search.

# 7. Categories

In your shop, you will display various types of content from various areas. On the one hand, this will include product information such as prices, pictures, descriptions, and so on. On the other hand, you will have pure text information such as articles, information on upcoming events, or something similar.

This information should be made available to the customer systematically.

Figure 68 shows an example of this type of structure.



Figure 68: Example of structural hierarchies

Categories are structure elements with which you can divide the contents of your Web shop into functional groups.

Starting off with one *basic category*, all additional structural or hierarchical levels extend into a tree structure. The basic category cannot be deleted.

The symbol next to the category ID displays type and status. The individual symbols have the following meanings:

#### Table 47: Category symbols

Symbol	Structural Element / Meaning
ø	Category, visible
ø	Category, not visible
	Item, visible
	Item not visible
	Link, visible
	Link, not visible
	Freely designable page, visible
	Freely designable page, not visible

Click the ID for the detail view on each page.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

#### Table 48: Special batch processing actions for categories

Action	Comment
Duplicate	Results in an identical image with the same general data and the same category and product assignments. Only the ID is different since each ID may only be used once within a category
Move to	Use this function to move categories or other elements to a different place in your tree structure.

**Note:** If you, as the merchant, go to the Web shop from the administration page to check a category, you will see the category even if this has been set to *Not Visible*. When you go to the next higher category level, this category will no longer be displayed as a subcategory as long as the status is set to *Not Visible*. While doing this, take note of the optimization settings. See *Optimization* on page 33.

<u>Note:</u> When you move categories, all associated and subordinate elements such as subcategories and products are moved as well, that is, these assignments remain in place.

*Caution:* If a category contains subcategories and it is deleted, it will be deleted together with their contents. The products retain their assignments intact and only the category assignments are deleted.

# **Types of Structure Elements**

Structure elements are divided into various types that differ in regard to function and content.

### Basic Category

The basic category is the root of your catalog tree. You cannot delete this structure element. However, you can edit the general properties of the basic category and directly assign your products.

As with the other categories, the basic category also has general properties, subcategories, and products.

<u>Note</u>: All the products assigned to the basic category are shown on the shop home page. For more on assigning products, see *Category Details* - Products on page 118.

## Categories

### Creating a Category

Search for the level in which you wish to add a new category. Enter an ID and a name for the category.

Use the drop-down menu in the next column to determine the structure element type.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Click the ID to edit the properties for this category and to assign products.

### **Category Details - Pages**

Here you find all the structure elements located under the current category.

### **Category Details - General**

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 49: Entry fields for category properties	
--	--

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	Equipment
Visible		Option button	
Name	Name used to display the category. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Equipment
Text	Informational text for the short description of the category contents. This display is language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	Big and small things - make your equipment complete. Browsing is worth it!
Image	Enter the path or use the <b>Browse</b> button to enter the path to the image file.	Entry field, alphanumeric	
Scale Image	Upload and display the category image in the shop at an optimized size (50 x 50 pixel).	Check box	
🧐 (Delete)	Delete category image.	Button	

Save your entries by clicking Save.

If you click the link with the name of the image file, the image will appear in a new browser window in the original size.

### **Category Details - Products**

To assign additional products to a category, you must add them from the tray. To do this, click the link **Add products from the tray** at the end of the table. For more information on working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

If you want to remove product assignments, select the check box at the beginning of the row for the corresponding product and click **Unassign**.

The sequence of the products in the table determines the display sequence in the shop. To change this sequence, you must change the sorting key in the last column. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

If you wish to edit product details, click the number of the product. For more on this, see *Product* Details on page 77.

### **Category Details - Layout**

For categories, you have a selection of layout variations. The layout variations available in the table should help you design easy-to-view product arrangements and category pages. In general, you can define whether the pages should be displayed above or below the product list. In addition, you can define whether the pages should be displayed in one or more columns.

<u>Note:</u> If you arrange the pages in more than one column, these pages are displayed first from the left to the right and so on downwards. This means that the first element in the multi-column arrangement is on the top left, the second to the right in the same row and so on. When all the columns are filled, the following elements are listed in the next row starting from the left.

Note that all the page elements are arranged, not only the subcategories. Page elements are all table entries on the **Pages** tab.

### Articles

The *Article* components let you edit text messages and present them in the shop. Contrary to the *Freely designable page*, see on page 120, an article has a predefined format or layout and set attributes.

To add an article, proceed as described in *Creating a* Category on page 117; only now you must select the type *Article* and save all the entries.

Click the ID for the new list entry and record the special parameters for articles. See Figure 69.

General 🗭			
ID	NewShopServices	Date	12
Visible	Yes O No		
English		Translation	Deutsch 💌
Name			
Fresh wind in the onlir	ne shop	Frischer Wind im C	Onlineshop
🗾 Summary			
Milestones offers a fre and more service for y	esh design, an expanded assortment, your purchases.		ab sofort neben einem frischen Design ein ent und mehr Service rund um Ihren
Text			
have grown, too. With shop is now a shop wit vacation with us. Mana follow your order statu	s for our shop have grownand we the new ePages shop system, our th kick. Register and plan your next age your own shopping lists and s.	wachsen mit. Mit d von ePages wird u Registieren Sie sic nächsten Urlaubstr	Ingen an unseren Shop wachsen - wir ler Einführung des neuen Shopsystems nsere Seite zum Shop mit Pfiff. h als Nutzer. Planen Sie mit uns Ihren rip. Verwalten Sie Ihre eigenen ormieren Sie sich über den Status aller
Attachment			
	Browse		Browse
Flyer_de.pdf (137	KB)	🗑 Flyer_de.pdf (	137 KB)
Attachment Label			
Print our Specials		Unsere Angebote :	zum Ausdrucken
Image	Browse NewsImage.gif (2 KB)	Preview (100%)	STONE
Save	Delete	_	

Figure 69: General properties for article pages

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric (max. 255 characters)	NewShopServices
Visible		Option button	
Name	Name used to display the category. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Fresh wind in the online shop
Summary	Short summary of the contents. This is displayed language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	Milestones offers a fresh design,

#### Table 50: Fields for articles

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Text	Article text that is displayed as language-dependent text. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	Your requirements for our shop have grown - and we have grown, too
Attachment	File attachment for the article. Enter the path directly or use the <b>Browse</b> button to enter the path of the image file.		Flyer_en.pdf
刻 (Delete)	Delete Attachment	Button	
Attachment Label	Title for the link to the attachment	Entry field, alphanumeric	Print our Specials
Image	Image for the article. Enter the path directly or use the <b>Browse</b> button to enter the path of the image file.	Entry field, alphanumeric	
Scale Image	Upload and display the image in the shop at an optimized size (50 x 50 pixel).	Check box	
刻 (Delete)	Delete article image.	Button	
Date	Editorial date of the article. Click 🔨 to automatically set the current date.	Entry field, date format	06/24/04

### **Design Your Own Pages**

Our *Freely Designable Page* components let you add individually designed Web pages to your Web shop. You are not bound to any design templates for this. This gives you the chance to freely implement design and function. For more information about formatting, see *Using HTML Commands in Entry* Fields on page 26 and *WYS/WYG* Editor on page 26.

To add a *Freely Designable Page*, proceed as described in *Creating a* Category, on page 117. However, here you now select the type *Freely Designable Page*.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Click the ID for the new list entry and record the special parameters for the freely designable page.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	TentInfo
Visible		Option button	
Name	Name used to display the category. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Tent care and tips for pitching

Table 51: Fields for a Freely Designable Page

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Text	Contents of the page. This is displayed language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.		<h2>Tent care and tips for pitching</h2>   <h3>Care</h3> 

### Link

With *Link* you have a component for placing links on other pages in your Web shop.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table	52:	Fields	for	creating	a <i>lin</i>	k

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	Home page
Visible		Option button	
New Window	Display in a new browser window.	Option button	
Name	Name used to display the link. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	About the manufacturer
Web Site	URL/address of the Web site you wish to open with this link. Always enter absolute links in this form: <i>http://</i> You can enter a separate URL for each language.	Text Field	<u>http://www.meindl.d</u> <u>e</u>

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### **Home Page**

As with the *Contact Information*, *Terms and Conditions*, *Customer Information*, and the *Promotional Products*, the home page is only used once.

Use this design option to welcome customers to your site, to inform them of the latest changes, or to present special offers.

**Note:** The home page is always shown as part of the first page in the shop.

In the *Text* field, you can use HTML tags to format the content that you wish to present to your customers on the home page. For more information about formatting, see *Using HTML Commands in Entry* Fields on page 26 and *WYS/WYG* Editor on page 26.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** To display products on the home page in the shop, you assign the corresponding products to the basic category. For more details, see *Basic* Category on page 116.

## **Contact Information**

The contact information is an important, and legally required (in Germany) component of your Web shop. The German Teleservices Act (§6) has required commercial Web sites to include a contact information page since January 1, 2002. This must include the following information:

- Name and address of the company
- Telephone, fax, and e-mail address
- Owner/board/stockholder/shareholders (depending on the company status)
- Company location/applicable court
- Registration number
- VAT identification number
- Party responsible for the contents (name of the responsible party in the sense of the media services national contract)

It must be possible to open the contact information page from every page on the Web site. The positioning of the contact information in the shop is done in the *Design* area by assigning the element *Link to contact information* to a specific page area. For more information, see *Navigation* on page 133.

Enter or change the necessary	contact information in the co	rresponding form. See Figure 70.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------------

English		Translation Deutsch 👻
Title		
Imprint		Impressum
Text		Die Milestones Demoshop GmbH ist eine fiktive Firma.
the abilities of our e-busing shown on this Web site are your orders are not process	nis fictitious company allows us to demonstrate ess software: ePages S. All products and prices for demonstration purposes only. That is why sed in this store. The products and content of friendly cooperation of Globetrotter Ausrüstung	Anhand dieser Firma möchten wir, die ePages Software GmbH, die Fähigkeiten unserer E-Business-Software ePages 5 demonstrieren. Alle auf dieser Vebseite verwendeten Produkte und Preise stellen keine Angebote dar.
Company		
Milestones Demoshop Gmb	L 11	
milescones bemosnop Gmi	DH	
Address	r /> Leutragraben 1 07743 Jena, Germany	
Address		
Address ePages Software GmbH <b< td=""><td>r /&gt; Leutragraben 1   07743 Jena, Germany</td><td></td></b<>	r /> Leutragraben 1 07743 Jena, Germany	
Address ePages Software GmbH <b +49-3641-573-100<="" phone="" td=""><td>r /&gt; Leutragraben 1   07743 Jena, Germany</td><td></td></b>	r /> Leutragraben 1 07743 Jena, Germany	
Address ePages Software GmbH <b +49-3641-573-100="" e-mail<="" phone="" td=""><td>r /&gt; Leutragraben 1   07743 Jena, Germany Fax +49-3641-573-111</td><td></td></b>	r /> Leutragraben 1 07743 Jena, Germany Fax +49-3641-573-111	
Address ePages Software GmbH <b +49-3641-573-100="" additional="" e-mail="" info@epages.de="" phone="" td="" text<=""><td>r /&gt; Leutragraben 1   07743 Jena, Germany Fax +49-3641-573-111 Managing Director</br></td><td><b>Steueridentifikation</b></td></b>	r /> Leutragraben 1 07743 Jena, Germany Fax +49-3641-573-111 	<b>Steueridentifikation</b>

Figure 70: General properties for the contact information

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Title	The text that appears as the title of the browser window and as the page heading. This is language-dependent	Entry field, alphanumeric	Contact Information
Text	Introductory text For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	Milestones Demostore GmbH is a fictitious company. This fictitious company allows us
Company	Company name	Entry field, alphanumeric	Milestones Demostore GmbH
Address	Company address For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	ACME Company Software GmbH ‹br› Leutragraben 1 ‹br› 07743 Jena, Germany
Phone	Phone number for the company.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1234568
Fax	Fax number for the company.	Entry field, alphanumeric	87654321
E-mail	E-mail address for the company.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Info@provider.de
Managing Director		Entry field, alphanumeric	Karl Kaufmann
Additional Text	Additional information about the company. This is language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text	Commercial Registry:Tax Identification VAT ID: Tax NoBank Details Bank: <br &gt;Account No.: Bank Code: SWIFT:</br 

Table 53: Fields for Contact Information

## **Terms and Conditions**

The terms and conditions are a required component of the Web shop, and strict regulations also apply here.

Terms and conditions have been legally regulated since 2002 (German BGB, paragraph 305 ff). There they are defined as "all pre-formulated contractual requirements for a multitude of contracts that one party (the user) provides to the other contract party when a contract is concluded".

They apply when the purchaser is explicitly referred to them during the conclusion of a contract, when the purchaser has the reasonable opportunity to inform himself of the contents of these requirements and is in agreement with them. If the customer says nothing about the terms and conditions, then this is considered as being in agreement.

It is therefore important that you can easily add your terms and conditions to the shop and that your customer can easily access them.

Closely connected to the terms and conditions is the customer information, which supplements the terms and conditions and explains the business requirements in greater detail as well as provides additional information. For more information, see *Customer*Information below.

<u>Note:</u> You can set up the order process so that the customer must confirm the terms and conditions before the purchase can be completed. See *Shopping Basket and* Orders on page 67.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Title	The text that appears as the title of the browser window and as the page heading. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Terms and Conditions
Text	Contents of the page. This is displayed language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text	<b>Time of contract conclusion:</b> br> Clicking the order button sends a 

Table 54: Fields for *Terms and Conditions* 

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Note:</u> The terms and conditions are displayed in the shop by using the *Navigation* command in the *Design* area. For more on this, see *Navigation* on page 133.

<u>Note:</u> You should review the default set of terms and conditions installed and adapt it, if necessary, to the current requirements of your shop or replace it with your own set of terms and conditions.

## **Customer Information**

Customer information is a supplement to the terms and conditions, see *Terms* and Conditions on page 123. This is meant to notify customers of the conditions of use, as well as the processes and procedures in the shop. As opposed to the terms and conditions, customer information is meant to be more informational and explanatory in nature.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Title	The text that appears as the title of the browser window and as the page heading. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Customer Information
Text	Contents of the page. This is displayed language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text	

Table 55: Entry field for customer information

**Note:** The link to the contact Information page is displayed using the *Navigation* function in the *Design* area of the shop. For more on this, see *Navigation* on page 133.

**Note:** You should review the default set of customer information installed and adapt it, if necessary, to the current requirements of your shop or replace it with your own set of customer information.

## **Promotional Products**

If you wish to start promotional activities in your shop and offer promotional items, use the *Promotional Products* page.

### **Promotional Products - General Properties**

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Name	Title of the page, on which the promotional products are displayed. This is language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Promotional Products
Text	Informational text that is displayed together with the title on the page with the promotional products. This is language-dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	<h1>Special Offers in the Milestones Demo Shop</h1> The items on these pages
Image			
Scale Image	Upload and display the image in the shop at an optimized size (50 x 50 pixel).	Check box	
🧕 (Delete)	Delete Image		

#### Table 56: Fields for Promotional Products

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### **Promotional Products - Products**

If you want to add new products to the table, you must add them from the tray. If you have added a product group to the tray, click the **Add Products from Tray** button. For more information on working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

<u>Note</u>: There are two navigation elements for displaying promotional products in the shop: *Promotional Products* and *Link to the Promotional Products*. They are positioned in the shop using the *Navigation* function in the *Design* area. For more on this, see *Navigation* on page 133.

# Import and Export

You can read a general description about importing and exporting in the chapter *Import and Export* on page 30.

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

Regarding categories, there are two import and export types. Note the following features for these types:

## **Categories - Import/Export**

With the import/export categories, you can export the catalog structure of your shop or read it into the system. This refers to all of the structure elements, see *Types of Structure* Elements on page 116 and their properties and how they are arranged in the catalog structure or hierarchy. You can see a sample of this kind of export file in Figure 71.

	A	В	C	D	E	F	
1	Type [Class]	Parent Object [Parent]	ID [Alias]	Sort Order [Position]	Visible [IsVisible]	Name/Deutsch [Name/de]	Name/Engli
2	Article		NewShopServices	10	1	Frischer Wind im Onlineshop	Fresh wind
3	Category		Jackets	20	1	Jacken	Jackets
4	Category		Shoes	30	1	Schuhe	Shoes
5	Category		Rucksacks	40	1	Rucksäcke	Backpacks
6	Category		Tents	50	1	Zelte	Tents
7	Category		Equipment	60	1	Ausrüstung	Equipment
8	Category		Books_Maps	70	0	Bücher & Karten	Books & M
9	Article	Shoes	SizeTable	10	1	Schuh-Größentabelle	Shoe size t
10	FreeContent	Shoes	ShoeInfo	20	1	So pflegen Sie Ihre Schuhe richtig	How to Care
11	Link	Shoes	ManufacturerInfo	30	1	Mehr Informationen zum Hersteller	More Manu
12	FreeContent	Tents	TentInfo	10	1	Zeltpflege und Tipps zum Aufbau	Tent Care a
13	Category	Tents	IndividualTents	20	1	1 Personen-Zelte	Individual te
14	Category	Tents	FamilyTents	30	1	Familien-Zelte	Family tent
15	Link	Tents/IndividualTents	TentInfo	10	1	Zeltpflege und Tipps zum Aufbau	Tent Care a
16	Link	Tents/FamilyTents	TentInfo	10	1	Zeltpflege und Tipps zum Aufbau	Zeltpflege u
17	Category	Equipment	Cleaner	10	1	Pflegemittel	Cleaner
10							

Figure 71: Category export file

If there is no entry in the *Parent Object [Parent]* column, the corresponding elements area assigned to the basic category.

## Category - Product Assignment - Import/Export

During a category-product assignment import/export, the product-category assignments are imported or exported. This where it is defined which products are assigned to which category. An example of this is shown in Figure 72:

	A	В	С	D
1	Category [Category]	Product [Product]	Sort Order [Position]	
2	Categories	ho_40407	10	
3	Categories	lt_0401107001	20	
4	Categories	eg_1000111010	30	
5	Categories/Jackets	ho_40407	10	
6	Categories/Jackets	be_40402	20	
7	Categories/Jackets	be_40401	30	
8	Categories/Shoes	md_49412090	10	
9	Categories/Shoes	md_49417110	20	
10	Categories/Rucksacks	de_3201212002	10	
11	Categories/Rucksacks	de_3203104010	20	
12	Categories/Rucksacks	vs_3202112018	30	
13		js_3200705005	40	
14	Categories/Rucksacks	de_3206199010	50	
15	Categories/Tents	ho_1112105010	10	
16	Categories/Tents/IndividualTents	wb_1003111010	10	
17	Categories/Tents/IndividualTents	nf_1005104010	20	
18	Categories/Tents/FamilyTents	eg_1000111010	10	
19	Categories/Tents/FamilyTents	ho_1112105010	20	
20	Categories/Equipment	hm_0100401001	10	
21	Categories/Equipment	lt_0401107001	20	
22	Categories/Equipment	cg_0100504001	30	
23	Categories/Equipment	cg_0101004270	40	
24	Categories/Equipment	cg_0101104470	50	
25	Categories/Equipment	er_7142303001	60	
26		ht_0801199030	10	
	Categories/Equipment/Cleaner	ht_0801099030	20	
	Pages/SpecialOffers	vs_3202112018	10	
	Pages/SpecialOffers	md_49417110	20	
30	Pages/SpecialOffers	hm_0100401001	30	
21		-		

Figure 72: Category import/export file

All promotional products are assigned to the category *Pages/PromotionalProducts*. If you would like to import products into this special category, you need to use this name as the category name.

<u>Caution</u>: In order to perform a category-product assignment import, the products used and a corresponding catalog structure must be available. If you make this available per import, you need to first perform the product import and the category import, and then after this, the category-product assignment import.

# **BMECat-Import**

Zum BMECat-Import lesen Sie im Kapitel *Produkte* den Abschnitt *BMECat-Import*, Seite 102.

# 8. Design

The *Design* option has in-depth functions to help you adapt the layout and design of your shop to your needs.

# Styles

A style contains all the information for the presentation of your shop. You can work with different styles.

In the table, you see preview image for each style, the name, and the status of the visible function. The image shows the layout of the shop based on the respective style. If you make changes to the style, these changes are not visible in the preview image in the table.

As soon as a style is edited and the changes have been saved, the change is indicated by a symbol (paintbrush) on the preview image. In addition, the date of the last change to the respective style is entered in the table.

The style, when set to visible, determines the appearance of the shop for your customers.

You can edit any other style without this having any effect on how the shop is presented to your customer. This allows you to prepare other styles and test them. You can activate one of the other styles at any time. Click the *Visible* option button for the corresponding style.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Transfer new styles from the *Templates* section. This is described in the chapter *Applying Template Styles* below.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

<u>Note</u>: During deletion, styles which you have given names to are completely deleted. Default styles can be added again in their original state from the *Templates* section.

## Applying Template Styles

If you would like to expand the current display options for your shop, you need to add new styles to the list. To do this, select a new style from the templates. Open the *Templates* section.

You can either use these styles unchanged for your shop design or use them as a basis for individual customizations. To transfer a template style to the table, select the option button for the style you want and click **Apply**. This loads the style into the table for you own styles.

You do not need any Web design knowledge for the majority of the functions for editing styles. HTML knowledge is helpful for certain configuration parameters. Here you should read the corresponding literature or ask a specialist for help.

The Web pages used to display your shop are normally divided into a maximum of seven functional areas. See Figure 73.



Figure 73: Structure of a shop site

The following areas are defined:

Area 1:	Header
Area 2:	Тор
Area 3:	Left
Area 4:	Content Area
Area 5:	Right
Area 6:	Bottom
Area 7:	Footer

It is important to understand these divisions since many of the following functions and parameters are based on these areas.

### General

In the *General* section, you set the name of the style and which of the seven areas will be used in your shop and how they will be positioned in the browser.

**Note:** If you do not change the name of a style and reload the style with the same name from the templates, any changes you have made will be written over and the style will be reset to its original settings. You must confirm this in the "Confirm Deletion" window.

**Note:** As long as you work within a style, you will have **View in Shop** in the context menu. Click this link to see how this style appears in the shop.

#### **Navigation Bars**

In this section, you define which navigation areas should be displayed in your shop.

Each style defines a certain relationship of the seven page areas to each other. You can see this page structure to the right of the *Navigation Bars* section.

In the upper section of the page, there are three basic layouts to select from. They differ mainly in the relative arrangements of the areas *Left* and *Right* in relation to the areas *Top*, *Bottom*, *Header*, and *Footer*.

Used the check boxes to the left next to the layout preview to set which of the areas will appear on the Web page.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** Note that the navigation elements assigned to the areas are deactivated if their corresponding areas are deactivated. If necessary, you will have to assign the navigation elements to the other areas. See *Navigation* on page 133.

### General Design Attributes

The *General Design Attributes* section defines the general appearance of your page in relation to the browser.

ID Star	:	
Navigation Bars		
= <u>Attributes</u>		
		Color Picker
Page Width	Full Width including border (90%)	
Page Align	Align Center 👻	
Top Padding	None 💟	
Font	Arial	
Background Color	#93B1CF	
Background Image	Browse	
Tile graphic	<ul> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	
Icon Set		

Figure 74: Defining the general design attributes

Here you can vary the position of your page in the browser window as follows:

Page Width: This offers pre-defined page widths that correspond to various screen resolutions.

For this, the individual page widths are defined as follows:

Page Width	Meaning
Full width (100%)	For the page layout, 100% of the browser window width is used, that is, the entire width of the browser window. (relative page width, changes according to the width of the browser window)
Full width including border (90%)	For the page layout, 90% of the browser window width is used. The padding on the edge of the browser window uses a total of 10%. (relative page width, changes according to the width of the browser window)
Optimized for 800 x 600px (770px)	This layout is optimized for a screen resolution of 800 x 600 pixels. This displays the page in the browser at a width of 770 pixels. (absolute page width, does not change according to the width of the browser window)
Optimized for 1024 x 768px (994px)	Layout optimized for a resolution of 1024 x 768px. The pages are displayed in the browser at a width of 994 pixels. (absolute page width, does not change according to the width of the browser window)
Optimized for 1024 x 768px with border (800px)	Layout optimized for a resolution of 1024 x 768px. The pages are displayed in the browser at a width of 800 pixels. (absolute page width, does not change according to the width of the browser window)
Optimized for 1024 x 768px with border (910px)	Layout optimized for a resolution of 1024 x 768px. The pages are displayed in the browser at a width of 910 pixels. (absolute page width, does not change according to the width of the browser window)
Optimized for 1024 x 768px with border (950px)	Layout optimized for a resolution of 1024 x 768px. The pages are displayed in the browser at a width of 950 pixels. (absolute page width, does not change according to the width of the browser window)

Table 57	7: Page	widths	for I	avouts
Tuble J	···usc	width5	101 1	uyouts

#### Page Alignment

The page can be aligned to the left or centered in the browser window. Select the corresponding value from the drop-down menu.

#### Top Padding

Set whether your page will be displayed directly on the top edge of the browser window or if padding should be inserted. Select the distance from the drop-down menu.

Along with the position, you can also set a background color and a background image for the entire shop.

#### **Background Color**

Select a background color that best complements your shop. There are two ways of adding color:

If you know the color code, enter it in the form #RRGGBB (RR - red percentage, GG - green percentage, BB - blue percentage). The coding of colors in HTML will not be discussed here. Please consult the corresponding technical literature.

Or first click the *Background Color* field and then select a color from the color palette in the right section of the page in Figure 74. This inserts the color code of the selected color into the *Background Color* field.

## Background Image

Instead of a background color, you can select a background image for your pages. In the field, enter the name of the file that contains the image or add it using the **Browse** function. After saving, the name of the background image is displayed below the entry field as a link.

A default template for the background image installed during the installation procedure is used. This is displayed using the **Template Graphic** link.

If you do not want to use a background image, click the *symbol*. A background image is no longer displayed in the shop and the name of the link changes to **Restore template**. Click this link to immediately restore the default template for the background image without having to search for file names.

**Note:** If you set both a background color and a background image, the background image will always be on top of the background color. Therefore, if you want to display the color, delete the background image. If the background is to be filled completely, the image must be resized to fit the area or you need to select Tile Graphics.

**Tile Graphic**: Background images can either be displayed as a single image or repeatedly displayed so that the background of the entire page is filled. This arranges copies of the image next to and below each other until they fit the whole page. Select *Yes* if the image should fill the whole page.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Symbol Set

Some functions and statuses are triggered or displayed with symbols. There are pre-defined sets of symbols as well.

In this overview of the various symbol sets, you can select the one that best suits your shop. Click the option button for the corresponding symbol set.

Action	Use
SimpleSymbols	Use this for a light background
SimpleSymbolsAlt	Alternate symbols that are not very dependent on the background. This is not suitable for very dark background colors.
SimpleSymbolsDark	Use this for a dark background.
SimpleSymbolsMedium	This can be used with a non-white background.

### Table 58: The various simple symbol sets

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Navigation

After determining which areas are to be active for your shop pages, you need to add functions to these areas. You determine where the navigation and display elements will be arranged on your shop site.

ral Customization Navigation 🦻					
Available Navigation Elements	>>		Assigned Navigation Elements	Sort Order	
Logo*	_		Home Page Link	10	
Shop Name*	<<		Imprint Link	20	
List of Top Level Categories*			Link to Contact Form	30	
Link to categories			Terms and Conditions Link	40	
Links to all top-level categories			Customer Information Link	50	
Promotional Items*			Basket Link	60	
Promotional Items Link					
Small Basket Box*		Sa	ve Sort Order		
Basket Status Box					
Login Box*					
Full text product search*					
Country Selection					
Flags for Country Selection*					
Currency Selection Box*					
Currency Coins					
Symbols for accepted credit cards (credit card, manual)					
Symbols for accepted credit cards (WorldPay)					
Symbols for accepted credit cards (T-Pay)					
Info Text*					
Copyright Statement*					
Trusted Shops seal*					
Trusted Shops seal with text					

Figure 75: Setting up navigation

The top section of the page shows the page structure that you defined in *General*.

The display shows where you can distribute the functions in the areas. The navigation and display elements that you can distribute are shown in the list to the left in Figure 75. These are all elements that you can still distribute on the page.

The list to the right shows which elements you have already assigned to the selected area.

You can assign every area any available navigation element. However, it does not make much sense to do this. For information about which elements are best suited for which areas, see *Navigation* Elements on page 135.

Navigation elements that are already assigned to other areas are marked with a star (\*).

In the overview, click the area you wish to customize. This is highlighted in yellow.

Extend the functionality of the right area by selecting available elements from the list. Then click >>. You can also remove elements from the left list again. Select the elements and click the << button. This removes your selection from the right list and moves it into the left list. You can also set the sequence for the navigation elements in this area. Use the sorting key in the last column in the right list. For more details, see *Sort via Sorting* Key on page 25.

When you are done entering the sorting key, click Save Sort Order.

#### **Navigation Elements**

Every navigation element is available for every area. However, due to their function and design, certain functions work best in certain areas. They work in other areas, but are out of place and disturb the design.

The navigation elements are described below together with suggestions for where they should be placed. You should check out the information about the divisions for horizontal and vertical areas in the *Customization* area. See *Customization* on page 136.

Navigation Element	Meaning on a shop Web page	Optimized for
Logo	Displays the shop logo. Also serves as a link to the shop's home page.	Horizontal areas, especially in the <i>Header</i> area
Link to Home Page		Vertical and horizontal areas
Shop name	Displays the shop name and slogan.	Horizontal areas, especially in the <i>Header</i> area
List of main categories	Vertical list of the main catalog categories with a list heading	Vertical areas
Link to Categories	Link to the page on which the main categories are displayed in the content area	Vertical and horizontal areas
Links to First Level Categories	List of the links to the main categories	Vertical and horizontal areas
Promotional Products	List of product names that are assigned to the <i>Promotional Products</i> page.	Vertical areas
Link to Promotional Products	Link to the <i>Promotional Products</i> page	Vertical and horizontal areas
Compressed Basket View	The compressed basket view with a display of the individual products, prices, shipping method, total price, and link to the basket.	Vertical areas
Basket Status	Displays the number of products in the basket and the current total price, link to the basket.	Vertical areas
Link to Shopping Basket		Vertical and horizontal areas
Sign in	Offers functions for the shop login and log off, to register as a new customer and newsletter subscriber, access to <i>My Account</i>	Vertical areas
Full-text Product Search	Product search or opens a detailed search mask	Vertical areas
Link to the General Terms and Conditions		Vertical and horizontal areas
Link to Contact Information		Vertical and horizontal areas
Link to Customer Information		Vertical and horizontal areas

Table 59: Using navigation elements

Navigation Element	Meaning on a shop Web page	Optimized for
Country Selection	List of all active country settings for the shop with country names	Vertical areas
Flags for Country Selection	Selection of the country settings using flag symbols	Vertical and horizontal areas, whereby the horizontal areas are preferable here
Currency Selection	Lists all active currencies for the shop with the switch currency function	Vertical areas
Symbols for Currency Selection	Currency selection via logos	Vertical and horizontal areas
Logos for Accepted Credit Cards (Credit Card, manual)	Display of the logos for the credit cards you accept and manually process. See also <i>Payment Method with Credit</i> Card, Manual on page 48.	Vertical areas
Logos for Accepted Credit Cards (WorldPay)	Display of the symbols for the payment option via WorldPay and the credit cards accepted for this. See also <i>Payment Method with</i> WorldPay on page 50.	Vertical areas
Logos for Accepted Credit Cards (T-Pay)	Display of the logos for the credit cards you accept via T-Pay. For more on this, see <i>Payment Method via</i> T-Pay on page 54.	Vertical areas
Informational Text	Displays a short text with general information, contact telephone number, and so on.	Vertical areas
Copyright Notice	Displays the copyright notice.	Vertical and horizontal areas
Link to Contact Form		Vertical and horizontal areas
Trusted Shops Seal of Approval	For more on this, see <i>Trusted Shops</i> on page 190.	Vertical areas
Trusted Shops seal of approval with text	Displays the Trusted Shops seal of approval with a text referring to the money-back guarantee. For more on this, see <i>Trusted Shops</i> on page 190.	Vertical areas

**Note:** The navigation elements can only be placed in the areas: *Header, Top, Left, Right, Bottom*, and *Footer*, but not in the content area.

## Customization

Although the wide selection of styles helps you set up a basic design, the *Customization* function allows you to individually design different areas according to Figure 73. You can change individual details such as the color, font and type size, dimensions, and so on.

	ization 🖗 Navigation		
Content Area 🌖			Color Picker 🔩
·			
	top right bottom left	Lists, Tables and Dial	ogs
Padding	10px 10px 10px 10px	Header	
		Font Color	#000000
Background Color	#FFFFF	Background Color	#D1D3D6
Background Image	Browse	Background Image	Browse
	👩 Template graphic		of Template graphic
Tile graphic	🔘 Yes 💿 No	List / Table Data	
		Light Row	#EFF1F2
	Size Color	Dark Row	#E5E7E8
Text	11px #000000		
Headline 1	18px #134B83	Footer	
Headline 2	13px #134B83	Background Color	#D1D3D6
Headline 3	12px #000000 Rollover Color	Background Image	Browse
Link	11px #134B83 # #2464A3	Commenter	of Template graphic
Hot Deal Price	15px #DE0000	Separator	
		Image	Browse
Products on the Hom			J remplace graphic
Background Image	Browse		
	of Template graphic		

Figure 76: Page for customizing individual areas

In the upper part of the working area, you see the structural presentation with the individual areas active for the current style as in the *Navigation* section. For more on this, see *Navigation* Bars on page 131.

**Note:** Here in the *Customization* module, the middle content area is also active and can be selected and edited.

If you consecutively activate all the areas, you will see that there are a considerable number of parameters that can be set. There are three groups with parameters and properties that correspond and can be summarized together. The areas can be divided as follows:

Horizontal areas:	header, top, bottom, footer
Vertical areas:	left, right
Content area	

#### **Customization Information**

The parameters for the individual modules are not shown until the design is complete. There are parameters that influence each other and are interdependent. These interactive effects must be taken into consideration. The following information should be helpful:

The parameters set in the *Customization* tab overwrite the same parameters in different modules. For example, if a background image is used in a style and you assign your own special background image via *Customization*, then the special background image will be displayed. You can also overwrite individual colors by changing the parameters in *Customization*.

Background images always take precedence over background colors. This means that if you load a background image and also set a background color, the background image will cover the color. And if you select an image set with background images and use *Customization* to select a background color, the colors in the background will be covered by the image.

Note the effect of individual area parameters on other areas. The height information for horizontal areas, and the width information for vertical areas will affect the size of the content areas, for example.

Assign colors for all the pages with a set color and an available color set as described in on page 132 *Background* **Color**.

All sizes and dimensions for the examples are shown in pixel (px). You can also use other sizes for style sheets, such as percent (%). For more information on the possible settings and how to use them, please consult the corresponding specialist literature or Web sites, such as <a href="http://de.selfhtml.org">http://de.selfhtml.org</a> (only partially in English).

#### **Horizontal Areas**

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Example
Height	Indicates the height of the area in pixels	27px
Padding	Distance from the text to the edge of the area. Four values can be entered. These values describe the distances to the edge of the area in a clockwise direction.	0 10px 0 10px
Margin	Distance of the area from the side edge or to the other areas. The side edge is determined in the module <i>Layout - General</i> <i>Design</i> Attributes on page 131. Four values can be set here. Their meanings are the same as for padding.	0 0 0 0
Align Elements	Position of the text entries within the area: Align left, centered, align right.	Align right
Background Color	For more information about entering background colors, read the corresponding section on page 132.	transparent
Background Image	Here you can determine which image will be used as the background. Enter either the name of the image file or click Browse to search for the file. As soon as an image is assigned as a background image, you can display it via the link beneath the entry field. For more information about background images and the associated link, read the corresponding section on page 133.	
Text	Size and color of the text	10px / #666666
Heading	Size and color for headings	12px / #134B83
Link	Size and color of links	#666666
Rollover color	Color of a link, when the user positions the cursor on it.	#666666

Table 60: Fields for horizontal areas

Field Name	Meaning	Example
Button	Background image, which can be put under a link or under an area, which contains an active element such as a link. Tabs are an example of this. Proceed as described for the <i>Background Image</i> field.	
Active Button	An active button is a button that is used to open an assigned function. The activation is highlighted though a change in the layout (for example, a different background image).	

### Vertical Areas

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 61: Fields for vertical areas				
	Table 61:	Fields for	vertical ar	eas

Field Name	Meaning	Example
Width	Indicates the width of the area in pixels.	190px
Padding	Distance from the text to the edge of the area. Four values can be entered. These values describe the distances to the edge of the area in a clockwise direction.	8 px 10px 10 px 10px
Background Color	For more information about entering background colors, read the corresponding section on page 132.	#D9DCDF
Background Image	Here you can determine which image will be used as the background. Enter either the name of the image file or click <b>Browse</b> to search for the file and enter it in the field. As soon as an image is assigned as a background image, you can display it via the link beneath the entry field. For more information about background images and the associated link, read the corresponding section on page 133.	
Tile Graphic	For more information, see <i>Tile Graphic</i> on page 133.	
Text	Size and color of the text	11px / #000000
Heading	Size and color for headings	12px / #134B83
Link	Size and color of links	11px / #134B83
Rollover Color	Color of a link, when the user positions the cursor on it.	#2464A3
Context Boxes	There are areas called content boxes in the vertical navigation areas. It consists of a header and the box for the contents.	
Header - Background Color		transparent
Header - Header image	Background image for the header. For more information, see <i>Background Image</i> .	
Box - Background Image	Background image for the box. For more information, see <i>Background Image.</i>	
Box – Row for a Box/Link - Background Color	The function elements in the box are arranged by rows. You can assign a background color to the row area here. For more information, see <i>Background Color</i> .	#EFF1F2

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### **Content Area**

Whereas the other areas contain mainly functional elements such as menus and links, the content area contains the product data and all the other information for your customers.

The size of the content area is determined by the height and width information of the other areas, as well as the padding, while the "rest" of the window is left for the contents.

Styles + Start General Customia	zation 🖗 Navigation		
Content Area (1)			Color Picker 3
	top right bottom left	Lists, Tables and Dial	ogs
Padding	10px 10px 10px 10px	Header Font Color	#000000
Background Color	#FFFFFF	Background Color	#D1D3D6
Background Image	Browse	Background Image	Browse
Tile graphic	Template graphic Yes O No	List / Table Data	of Template graphic
The graphic		Light Row	#EFF1F2
	Size Color	Dark Row	#E5E7E8
Text	11px #000000		
Headline 1	18px #134B83	Footer	
Headline 2	13px #134B83	Background Color	#D1D3D6
Headline 3	12px #000000 Rollover Color	Background Image	Browse (1)
Link Hot Deal Price	11px #134B83 #2464A3	Separator	of remplace graphic
Hot Dear Price		Image	Browse
Products on the Home	e Page		• Template graphic
Background Image	Browse		
	of Template graphic		
Save			

Figure 77: Settings for the content area

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Example
Padding	Distance from the text to the edge of the area. Four values can be entered. These values describe the distances to the edge of the area in a clockwise direction.	0 10px 0 10px
Background Color	For more information about entering background colors, read the corresponding section on page 132.	#FFFFF

#### Table 62: Parameters for the content area

Field Name	Meaning	Example
Background Image	Here you can determine which image will be used as the background. Enter either the name of the image file or click <b>Browse</b> to search for the file and enter it in the field. As soon as an image is assigned as a background image, you can display it via the link beneath the entry field. For more information about background images and the associated link, read the corresponding section on page 133.	
Tile Graphic	For more information, see <i>Tile Graphic</i> on page 133.	
Text	Size and color of the text	11px / #000000
Heading 1 – 3	You can format up to 3 levels of headings. Enter the size and color for each heading.	18px / #134B83 13px / #134B83 12px / #000000
Link	Size and color of links	11px / #134B83
Rollover Color	Color of a link, when the user positions the cursor on it.	transparent
Price Emphasis	For setting the size and color of prices.	15px / #DE0000
Products on the Home Page		
Background Image	Background image for the product presentation on the home page. See <i>Background Image</i> .	
Lists, Tables, and Dialogs	Here you can format the header, the footer, and set different display options for rows on different pages. Dialogs are sections in the content area, where you have access to functions via links or where entry fields are filled. An example of this is the <i>My Account</i> area.	
Header – Font Color		#D1D3D6
Header - Background Color	For more information, see <i>Background Color</i> .	
Header – Background Image	For more on this, see <i>Background Image</i> .	
List/Table Data - Light Row	To improve legibility, you can give the table rows alternating light and dark color shading. Enter the color code for the lighter color in the field.	#EFF1F2
List/Table Data -Dark Row	Enter the color code for the darker rows.	#E5E7E8
Footer - Background Color	For more information, see <i>Background Color</i> .	#D1D3D6
Footer - Background Image	For more on this, see <i>Background Image</i> .	
Separator		
Image	In the content area, certain sections can be marked off by a separator. As soon as you have loaded an image, the option <i>Tile Graphic</i> becomes active. For more details, see <i>Tile Graphic</i> on page 133.	

# Settings

The settings in the *Design* area refer to the content of certain display elements of your shop page such as logo, slogan, copyright information, and so on.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Informational text	Navigation element for information and notes for the customer. See <i>Navigation</i> Elements on page 135. The text is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26.		Have questions?‹br /›Our toll-free hotline
Copyright Notice	Navigation element for the notification of copyright protection. See <i>Navigation</i> Elements on page 135. The text is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Copyright © ePages 2005
Slogan	Navigation element, see <i>Navigation</i> Elements on page 135. The text is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26.	Text field, alphanumeric	Well prepared to meet your goals
Logo Link	Link to the logo. Make sure the link starts with http://www The link can be language-dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	http://www.epages. milestones.de
Logo	Navigation element, see <i>Navigation</i> Elements on page 135. Enter either the name of the image file or click <b>Browse</b> to search for the file and enter it in the field. After clicking <b>Save</b> , the image is displayed in the preview area.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Logo.gif
Delete	If the check box is selected and you click <b>Save,</b> the image is deleted without the "Confirm Deletion" window.	Check box	

Table 63: Fields for general design settings

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

# 9. Orders

If you open the **Orders** page (from the main navigation bar or the context menu), no orders are shown initially.

You can use the link *Orders* to display all new orders. New orders are orders for which no status has been set.

You can also perform a search to find the order you wish to see. Proceed as described in on page 144 *Search*.

Note: Since each order can have different status levels, the last set status appears in the table.

To open the page with the order details, click the corresponding order number.

**Note:** You can have the system automatically inform the customers per e-mail as soon as you have set a status for an order. The corresponding e-mail function must be active for this. See *E-mail* Settings on page 37.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Set status	You can set up to ten status levels for the orders. The following status levels are available: <i>Viewed, Rejected, In Process, Pending, Ready for Shipment, Partially</i> <i>Dispatched, Dispatched, Shipment Finished, Partially Invoiced, Partially</i> <i>Paid, Paid, Closed, Archived</i> .
Export	Selected orders are saved in a text file. They can be opened by any text processing program and processed or saved for archiving purposes.

#### Table 64: Special batch processing actions for user management

*Caution:* You can only delete orders with the status *Rejected* or *Archived*.

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

# Search

(All)		12 - 12		a 🐹 🗧 🖗
Status		Product No.		
(All)	✓ and			
(All)	Y and			
(All)	×			
ders				
General 🛸				
Order No. △▽	Created on △▼	Customer ∆⊽	Total Amount △♡	Status
1009	5/23/05 3:26 PM	Max Mustermann	364.85€	
1008	5/23/05 3:10 PM	Max Mustermann	1,052.36€	
1007	5/23/05 1:54 PM	Max Mustermann	72.95€	
1006	5/17/05 2:53 PM	Max Mustermann	\$372.80	
1005	5/17/05 2:36 PM	Max Mustermann	339.95€	Viewed
1004	5/17/05 1:46 PM	Max Mustermann	375.48 €	Viewed
1003	6/29/04 5:36 PM	John Doe	89.90€	
1002	6/28/04 4:58 PM	Max Mustermann	215.95€	
1001	6/21/04 4:45 PM	Max Mustermann	572.90 €	Paid
				Number: 9

Figure 78: Advanced search form for orders

The following buttons are important for searches:

Start the search according to the entries in the search fields

The search mask is reset and all the entries are deleted from the search fields.

Switch between simple and advanced search.

**Note:** You can use the placeholder *\** in the text fields for portions of the search text you do not wish to enter or cannot enter. Capitalization is not noted. The system searches for character strings in which the search text appears, regardless of where this is in the target text.

**Note:** The search fields are AND searched by default. In other words, a dataset must meet all the criteria defined by the entries in the search fields and not just one of them.

## Simple Search

The individual fields have the following meanings:
Search Field	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Status		Drop-down menu	
Order Number	Text that needs to be included in the number being searched for.	Entry field, alphanumeric	100*
Time frame	Query of the time frame of an order In the first field, enter the start date; in the second field, enter the end date. Click the 📧 symbol to insert the current date.	Date field	05.07.2005

Table 65: Search fields in the simple search mask

Note: When you enter a date for a time frame search, the system assumes that the time is 0:00 A.M.

# Advanced Search

If the search settings for the simple search are not sufficient, then use the advanced search. Along with the fields for the simple search, there are three more status fields and one more fields for a search by product number. You can search based on various status combinations as well as for orders with a specific product.

**Note:** If you need an overview of all orders for a customer, then go to the *Customer* area to display the details for the customers. All of the customer's orders are listed in the **Orders** tab.

# Orders - General

The general properties of an order provide you with an overview of all necessary order data such as the current processing status, products ordered, delivery and invoice address, and so on.

Status								
	/ed		Partially dispa	atched	[	Partial	y paid	
📃 Reje	ected		Dispatched		[	Paid		
In P	rocess		Shipment Finished		[	Closed		
Pend	ding		Partially invoi	Partially invoiced Archive		ed		
Read	dy for Shipme	ent	Invoiced					
Custome	er	Max Mustermann - Etv	vas Unternehmen	ı GmbH (1001)				
Order Nu	imber	1010	Send Order Confi	irmation mail				
Billing Ac	daace			Shipping Addre				
irst Nam		Max		First Name	:ss Helr	nut		
iddle Na		A.		Middle Name				
ast Nam		Mustermann		Last Name	Mus	termann		
Address Extension				Address Extens	ion			
Street Blumenweg 42		Blumenweg 42		Street	Tulp	enweg 2		
IP / Pos	stal Code /	01234	Neustadt	ZIP / Postal Co	de/ 012	34	Ne	eustadt
City				City				
Country		Deutschland		Country Deutschland		tschland		
tate		Thüringen		State Thüringen				
-Mail		m.mustermann@epag	es.de E-Mail		h.mustermann@epages.de			
No.	Quantity	Product No.	Nai		UP	VAT	Discount	тр
1	1 Piece	🥡 lt_0401107001	Leatherman To	ol Survival	72.95€	16%		72.95€
2	Subtotal							72.95€
3	Shipping Me	thod	Postal Service					
4	Payment Me	ethod	Invoice					
5	Tax Area		EU country					
6	Total Amou	nt (incl. VAT)						72.95€
7	Value Adde	d Tax: normal (16 %)						10.06€

Figure 79: Detail view of orders

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 66: Fields	for order details
------------------	-------------------

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Status	After you have clicked <b>Save</b> , the current date is added to the selected status. Multiple statuses can be set. Registered customers can view the status in the shop.	Check box	

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Order Number	Unique number that is assigned by the system when the order is created. You can change it here.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1005
Send Order Confirmation Mail	You can send current order information to customers at any time. The order confirmation is sent to the address entered in the customer details in the <i>User Account</i> in the <i>E-mail</i> field. See <i>Customer Details – General –</i> Sign In on page 110.	Link	
Order Comment	During the order process, customers can enter a comment about the order. It is displayed here.	Display	
Internal Order Comment	Comments or information about the order. For internal use.	Text field, alphanumeric	Call the customer back.
Edit	This activates the order information to processing.	Button	
Delete	You can only delete orders with the status <i>Rejected</i> or <i>Archived</i> . If you delete orders with the status <i>Rejected</i> , the stock for the product is "increased" again by the order amount.		

**Note:** In the table shown in Figure 78, the last status set is always shown for the order.

**Note:** Due to security reasons, credit card data in the database for orders paid to you by credit card (payment method *Credit Card, manual* are deleted after the order is set to the status of *Paid*. The only information that remains is a note that the order was paid by credit card.

**Note:** Before the order confirmation e-mail message can be sent, the e-mail event *Order confirmation* must be active. For more on this, see *E-mail* Settings on page 37.

<u>Caution</u>: Before you leave this page, save your entries with Save. If you don't, this information will not be applied. This also applies to changes made with Edit or Documents.

# **Editing Address and Order Details**

Additional order data, such as the address information, article list, shipping and payment methods, can be edited by clicking **Edit**. The page shown in Figure 80 appears for editing.

	Iresses								
Billing	Address			Shipping Addr	ess				
First Na	ame	Max		First Name		Helmut			
Middle	Name	Α.	Middle Name						
Last Name Mustermann Address Extension		Last Name Address Extensi		Mustermann					
Street Blumenweg 42			Street	Т	ulpenweg	2			
ZIP / P	ostal Code /	01234 Neu	stadt	ZIP / Postal C	ode/ 0	1234	Neus	tadt	
City				City	_				
Country Deutschland		*	Country	ſ	eutschla	nd	*		
State Thüringen				State		hüringen			
-Mail m.mustermann@epag		ges.de	E-Mail	h	.mustern	nann@epage	s.de		
= Det	ails								
= Det No.	ails Quantity	Product No.		Name	UP	VAT	Discount	ТР	
		Product No.	Leatherma	Name In Tool Survi	UP 72.95 €	VAT 16%	Discount	TP 72.95 €	0
No.	Quantity		Leatherma				Discount		0
No. 1	Quantity	🥡 lt_0401107001	Leatherma Postal Ser	in Tool Survi			Discount	72.95 €	0
1 2	Quantity 1 Piece Subtotal	<b>it_0401107001</b>		n Tool Survi			Discount	72.95 €	0
No. 1 2 3	Quantity 1 Piece Subtotal Shipping Met	<b>it_0401107001</b>	Postal Ser	rvice 💌			Discount	72.95 €	0
No. 1 2 3 4	Quantity           Quantity           1         Piece           Subtotal           Shipping Met           Payment Met	<b>it_0401107001</b>	Postal Ser Invoice	rvice 💌			Discount	72.95 €	3
No. 1 2 3 4 5	Quantity       1     Piece       Subtotal       Shipping Met       Payment Met       Tax Area       Total Amount	<b>it_0401107001</b>	Postal Ser Invoice	rvice 💌			Discount	72.95 € 72.95 €	0
No. 1 2 3 4 5 5 6	Quantity 1 Piece Subtotal Shipping Met Payment Met Tax Area Total Amoun Value Added	It_0401107001  hod  hod  t (incl. VAT)  Tax: normal (16 %)	Postal Ser Invoice EU country	rvice 💌	72.95 €		Discount	72.95 € 72.95 € 72.95 €	0
No. 1 2 3 4 5 5 6	Quantity 1 Piece Subtotal Shipping Met Payment Met Tax Area Total Amoun Value Added Quantity:	It_0401107001  hod  hod  t (incl. VAT)  Tax: normal (16 %)	Postal Ser Invoice EU country	rvice 💌			Discount	72.95 € 72.95 € 72.95 €	3

Figure 80: Order details for addresses and article lists

Use this page to change the address information for the invoice and shipping, and to edit the article list by deleting and adding articles, and changing invoice and shipping methods.

## **Order Details**

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Quantity		Entry field, numeric	2
Shipping Method		Drop-down menu	
Payment Method		Drop-down menu	
Quantity / Product Number	Add a specific quantity of a product by directly entering the quantity and product number. Finish your entries by clicking 🗣.	Entry field, numeric, Entry field, alphanumeric	3, eg_100111011
Add Products from Tray		Link	

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
0	Delete a product from an order. The product itself is not deleted	Button	
Update	The order is recalculated and displayed with the new values. This processing status remains until you accept the changes with <b>Apply</b> or cancel all changes with <b>Cancel</b> . After the update, you will receive a message that the data have not been permanently saved.		
Apply	Saves of all changes.	Button	
Cancel	Changes are deleted. The order retains the data that was saved last.	Button	

*Caution:* You must update the page before you apply the changes.

<u>Note</u>: It is also a good idea to notify the customers about changes made to their orders. To do this, use, for example, the **Send Order Confirmation Mail** link. See *Orders – General* on page 145.

# Orders – Documents

For each order, you can generate various documents, such as invoices, packing slips, and credit notes. The link is only active if you are not in *Edit Mode* for an order.

All the documents that you have created for the associated order are listed n the table on this page. You can access the details for any of these documents via the document type. Since you can create more than one document of a type, the number in the document column next to the number of the order shows the consecutive number of the type.

As soon as you finalize a document, the date of finalization is displayed in the last table column. The symbol in front of the name also shows this document status:

Symbol	Meaning
	Document is active and can be processed.
	Document is finalized and can no longer be edited.

#### Table 68: Symbols for order documents

If you would like to generate a new document, select the type from the drop-down menu beneath the table.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Take note of the following information when working with order documents:

- Finalized documents cannot be selected and therefore can also not be deleted.
- You can change the quantities of the individual order items in the documents. These changes do not affect the order, that is, the changed quantities are not applied to the order.

- Changes in to the order only affect documents that are created after the changes have been made. Documents that were created before the changes remain unchanged.
- Changes made to quantities in the documents do not affect inventory levels.

Details in individual documents are edited depending on the type:

# Packing Slip

Herr			Packing Slip				
Helmut Mustermann			Packing Slip	1011-2	Customer No. 1001		
			Number:				
Tulpenweg	2		(Use for all payme	ents and queries.)			
1234 Neu	stadt / Thüringen		Packing Slip Date	5/24/05	💯 Order Date 🛛 🕄	/24/0	
Deutschlan	d						
No.	Quantity	Product No.		Name			
1	1 Piece	🥡 lt_0401107001	Leatherr	man Tool Survival	0		
2 *	1 Piece	🥡 hm_0100401001	Mag Lite	e Mini	9		
3 *	1 Piece	🥡 de_3201212002	Deuter H	Hydro 2.0	0		
These ite	ems are also available (	on other packing slips.					
lilestones	Demoshop GmbH						
Ailestones .eutragrab )7743 Jen;							

Figure 81: Packing slip view

If a line item number is marked with a star (\*), this means that this product is also listed in other packing slips belonging to this order.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
🛸 Print View	The print view is seen in a separate browser window	Link	
Packing Slip Number	This number is suggested by the system and consists of the order number and a running number for packing slips.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1001-1

#### Table 69: Fields for a packing slip

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Packing Slip Date	The creation date is automatically set. If you need to make manual changes, enter the desired date in the required format. Click 2 to insert the current date.	Date field	19.04.05
Quantity	Adapt the order quantity to the delivery quantity.	Entry field, numeric	2
0	Delete a line item	Link	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** Always click **Save** after you enter the packing slip number and date. Otherwise, the current data will not be applied to the print view.

**Note:** If you have included a note for the shipping method, it is displayed with the sender data.

**Note:** When printing via the browser and depending on the browser settings, overlapping headers and footers (such as the base number, Internet address, date) may also be printed. You can change these settings. For Internet Explorer, click *File* >> *Page Setup* in the navigation bar. This has a *Header and Footer* section. The values entered here are printed on every page printed via the browser. If you do not wish to print any of this information, simply delete the entries in the two fields.

Always finish your editing by clicking **Finalize**. For more details, see *Finalizing Documents* on page 160.

# UPS Packing Slip

Along with its delivery service, UPS offers software that you can use to create the necessary shipping documents and track orders. This program is called *WorldShip*.

This always gives you the latest status of the goods you have shipped.

The system lets you use the *UPS Packing Slip* functions in the shop, not only in the administration area for you as the merchant but also in the shop for your customers. This means that even your customers are kept up-to-date on the current shipping status of the goods they have ordered.

## Requirements

In order to offer this service to your customers, you need to meet certain requirements. This includes registering with UPS and installing the program *WorldShip*.

First sign up with UPS and register. To do this, open the <u>www.ups.en</u> site and click *Register*. After registration, log in and apply for a customer number in the *My UPS* menu. Among other things, you need this customer number to install the *WorldShip* program.

In the next step, request the *WorldShip* software from UPS. To do this, click the menu option *Business Solutions* on the UPS site. To left, click the *Portfolio of Services* link. On the following page, you will again see the *WorldShip* link to the left. Click it, fill out the form displayed, and submit it.

UPS will then send you the software. After you receive it, install it. Follow the instructions provided by UPS.

## Activating Order Tracking

For UPS packing slips, the functions and editing of the individual parameters correspond mainly to the *normal* packing slip. For more information on this, see Packing Slip on page 150.

Features of the UPS packing slip include the *UPS Tracking Number* parameters, the **UPS Registration and Software** link where you can order *WorldShip* software and the **Export** function. See Figure 82.

lerr				Packing Slip		
	ustermann		UPS Trac			
			Number	-		
ulpenweg	g 2					
	ustadt / Thüringen		Packing S	Slip 1011-1	Customer No.	1001
eutschlar)	nd		Number:	all payments and queries.)		
			Packing S		Order Date	5/24/0
			Date:			
No.	Quantity	Product No.		Name		
1	1 Piece	it_0401107001		Leatherman Tool Survival		0
2	1 Piece	im_0100401001		Mag Lite Mini		0
3	1 Piece	i de 3201212002		Deuter Hydro 2.0		0
lilestones eutragrat 7743 Jen Phone: +4 ax: +49-	s Demoshop GmbH ben 1	other UPS packing slips				

Figure 82: UPS Packing Slip

In the *UPS Tracking Number* field, enter the number which is a prerequisite for order tracking. This number is generated for the respective *Worldship* shipment and you transfer this to the form in Figure 82. For this, you need to submit the packing slip data to *WorldShip*. To do this, use the **Export** function.

### **Exporting Delivery Data**

The delivery data must be transferred to the *WorldShip* program. From here, these data are transmitted to UPS and the UPS tracking number is generated.

#### Importing to WorldShip and Generating a Tracking Number

Start *WorldShip* and activate in the *Import* function in the *File* menu.

After this, the import window opens and you can enter the file that you have exported out of the shop system:

Import To: Open Shipments	-	Field Sepa Comma	rator		<b></b>	C Ove		
Profile Name:	•	Text Delimi Quote	ter		•	C App	end	
C:\temp\export.csv				<u>B</u> rov	vse	© Fix I		y
Receivers		Shipment		A	dditional Serv	/ices		Invoice
First row contains field names					Fields in In	ternal Table		
Empfänger: Firmenname Empfänger: Kontaktperson Empfänger: Adresszeile 1 Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz Empfänger: Telefonnummer			Ma Clea	ar	Receiver Receiver Receiver Receiver Receiver Receiver Receiver	Company Contact P Address L Address L Address L City/Town Country/To Postcode	erson ine 1 ine 2 ine 3 erritory	

Figure 83: Determining the import file and parameters

The first thing you need to do is set the *Open Shipments* option in the *Import To* field. The *Field Separator* and *Text Delimiter* fields are set by default to the values in the figure. Be sure to check them and correct any divergent options.

Enter the name of the import file in the field *Import File is located in:* or load using the **Browse** function. Since the file always contains a header, you need to select the check box *First row contains field names*.

Two list fields are arranged in the lower part of the form. The individual fields in the import file are listed in the one to the left. In the one to the right, you see the fields, which *WorldShip* uses internally. In order for your data to be correctly applied and processed, the import file fields must be mapped to the corresponding fields in the *WorldShip* database. In order to simplify mapping, the import file fields have been given the same names as the internal *WorldShip* fields. However, you need to map some of the fields to the *Receiver* tab and others to the *Shipment* tab.

The following mapped items are defined by default:

Table 70: Field name	mapping between	the import file	and the field	names in the inter	nal UPS tables
----------------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------	--------------------	----------------

Import File Field Names	Internal UPS Field Names
Tab Receiver	
Receiver: Company Name	Receiver: Company Name
Receiver: Contact Person	Receiver: Contact Person
Receiver: Address Line 1	Receiver: Address Line 1
Receiver: City/Town	Receiver: City/Town
Receiver: Country/Territory	Receiver: Country/Territory

Import File Field Names	Internal UPS Field Names
Receiver: Postcode	Receiver: Postcode
Receiver: State/Province	Receiver: State/Province
Receiver: Telephone Number	Receiver: Telephone Number
E-mail Address 1	E-mail Address 1
Name of E-mail Recipient 1	Name of E-mail Recipient 1
Company Address for Return To/Forward For	Company Address for Return To/Forward For
Contact Person for Return To/Forward For	Contact Person for Return To/Forward For
Address 1 for Return To/Forward For	Address 1 for Return To/Forward For
City/Town for Return To/Forward For	City/Town for Return To/Forward For
Postcode for Return To/Forward For	Postcode for Return To/Forward For
Country/Territory for Return To/Forward For	Country/Territory for Return To/Forward For
State/Territory for Return To/Forward For	State/Territory for Return To/Forward For
E-mail Address for Return To/Forward For	E-mail Address for Return To/Forward For
Telephone for Return To/Forward For	Telephone for Return To/Forward For
Tab Shipment	
Shipment Actual Weight	Shipment Actual Weight
Description of Goods	Description of Goods
Reference 1	Reference 1
Reference 2	Reference 2

In Figure 84, you see an example of the field mapping in the *Receiver* tab.

Import To:	Field Separator		-Import Behavi	our
Open Shipments	✓ Comma	•	C Overwrite	
Profile Name:	Text Delimiter		C Append	
	▼ Quote		-Error Handling	<b>n</b>
				- -
Import File is located in:			Fix Interac	tively
C:\temp\export.csv		<u>B</u> rowse	C Fix Later	
Receivers	Shipment	Additional Servic	ces	Invoice
First row contains field names			I	
Fields in External Table		Fields in Inte	mal Tablo	
Empfänger: Firmenname			Company Nam	
Empfänger: Kontaktperson			Contact Persor	
Empfänger: Adresszeile 1			Address Line 1	
		Beceiver A	Address Line 2	
Empfänger: Ort				
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet		Clear Receiver A	Address Line 3	
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl		Receiver A	Address Line 3 Dity/Town	Empfänger: (
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz	Clears selec	Receiver A Receiver ( Receiver (	Address Line 3 Dity/Town Dountry/Territo	Empfänger: C ry Empfänger: L
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz Empfänger: Telefonnummer	Clears selec	Clear Receiver A Receiver ( Receiver ( Receiver (	Address Line 3 Dity/Town Dountry/Territo Postcode	Empfänger: C ry Empfänger: L Empfänger: F
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz	Clears selec	Clear Receiver A Receiver ( Receiver ( Receiver (	Address Line 3 Dity/Town Dountry/Territo Postcode	Empfänger: C ry Empfänger: L
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz Empfänger: Telefonnummer	Clears selec	Clear Receiver A Receiver ( Receiver ( Receiver (	Address Line 3 Dity/Town Dountry/Territo Postcode	Empfänger: C ry Empfänger: L Empfänger: F
Empfänger: Ort Empfänger: Land/Gebiet Empfänger: Postleitzahl Empfänger: Staat/Provinz Empfänger: Telefonnummer	Clears selec	Clear Receiver A Receiver ( Receiver ( Receiver (	Address Line 3 Dity/Town Dountry/Territo Postcode	Empfänger: C ry Empfänger: L Empfänger: F

Figure 84: Field mapping for receiver data

On this page, map data relevant to the receiver, such as address, contact person, and so on. On the *Shipment* tab, synchronize all the fields that include shipment data. See Figure 85.

itabase Import Import File							
Import To:	Field Separator			– Import B	ehaviour		
Open Shipments	Comma		-	O Over	write		
Profile Name:	Text Delimiter			C Appe	end		
-	Quote		-	-Error Ha	ndling		
Import File is located in:					teractively		
C:\temp\export.csv		<u>B</u> row	/se	⊂ Fix L			
1							
Receivers	Shipment	Ac	dditional Servio	ces		Invoice	
First row contains field names     Fields in External Table			Fields in Inte	rnal Table			
Land/Gebiet für Zurück an/Versenden Staat/Provinz für Zurück an/Versender			Shipment Billing Opt				-
E-Mail-Adresse für Zurück an/Versend	_	<u>M</u> ap	Number o	f Package			
Telefon für Zurück an/Versenden für Tatsächliches Gewicht der Sendung				Actual We Dimensio		itsächliches	
Warenbeschreibung		Clear		n of Good	-	arenbeschr	
Referenz 1		Clear <u>A</u> ll	<ul> <li>Reference</li> </ul>	e 1		eferenz 1	
Referenz 2	┘ _ └─			e 2			-
Delete Save				Ir	nport	Cano	el

Figure 85: Field mapping for shipment data

Map the data as follows:

- Select the field in the right list field for external data fields by clicking.
- Select the corresponding field in the left list field for internal data fields by clicking.
- Click the Map button.

**Note:** You only have to do this mapping the first time you perform an import. The mapping is retained for all the following import actions.

If all the options are set correctly and all the fields are mapped, click **Import**.

Continue to edit the shipment as described in the *WorldShip* instructions. To generate the tracking number required for shipment tracking, click **Finish** after completing all your entries.

Among other things, this saves the shipment in the shipping history and gives you the option of seeing the UPS tracking number.

#### Order Tracking Activating

You need to transfer the UPS tracking number that you generated for the order in *WorldShip* into the shop administration and enter the respective UPS packing slip in the *UPS Tracking Number* field provided.

In order to activate order tracking, you need to save the entries. After saving, the **Track Shipment** link is displayed in addition to the UPS tracking number.

Use this link to open the UPS page where you can see the status of your shipment.

### Order Tracking in the Shop

As soon as the tracking number has been entered and saved, the shipment tracking link also becomes available for the corresponding customer.

The customer opens order tracking in *My Account* under the *Query Order Status* option.

Milestones			
	o achieve your goals!		
	» Home Page » Contact information » Contact » Terms a	Ind Conditions >> Customer Information	» Your shopping basket is empty.
Categories	My Account » Query order status » Order 1011	Print View	Shopping Basket
Jackets			Your shopping basket is empty
Shoes	Status Date		Max Mustermann
Backpacks	Order was received 5/24/05 (4:17 PM)		
Tents	UPS Tracking Number: 🚺 The shipment was delivered by UPS		→ My Account     → Sign out
Equipment	UPS Tracking Number: In the shipment was delivered by UPS 1Z0V54676648417420 + Track Shipment		-
Product Search	120V34070040417420 + 118CK Shipment		Currency Selection
	Quantity Name	UP Discount TP	€ (Euro)
	1 Piece Leatherman Tool Survival	72.95 € 72.95 €	\$ (US Dollar)
+ Advanced Search	1 Piece Mag Lite Mini	16.95€ 16.95€	<b>= =</b>
Special Offers	1 Piece Deuter Hydro 2.0	74.95€ 74.95€	
-	Subtotal	164.85€	
Black Bear Gemini	Shipping Postal Service Method	0.00€	
MILESTONES	Payment Invoice Method		
	Tax Area EU country		
Meindl Air Revolution 2.0	Total Amount	164.85€	
\$169.95	Value Added Tax: standard (16 %)	22.74 €	
Mag Lite Mini			

Figure 86: Opening order tracking for customers

## Invoice

In order to generate an invoice for an order, you first need to create a document of type *Invoice*. You can edit the details of an invoice on the page in Figure 87 by clicking the type ID for that invoice.

lerr			Invoice					
lelmu	ıt Mustermann		Invoice No.	10	11-1	Cu	stomer No.	1001
			(Use for all	payments a	nd queri	es.)		
ulper	nweg 2		Invoice Dat	e 5/2	25/05	T2 Ord	der Date	5/24/0
1234	Neustadt / Thür	ringen						
eutso	chland							
ve ap	opreciate your or	der and present you here	by with the invoice for:					
No.	Quantity	Product No.	Name	UP	VAT	Discount	ТР	
1	1 Piece	🥡 lt_0401107001	Leatherman Tool Survi	72.95 €	16%		72.95€	0
2	1 Piece	🩀 hm_0100401001	Mag Lite Mini	16.95€	16%		16.95€	0
3	1 Piece	🥡 de_3201212002	Deuter Hydro 2.0	74.95€	16%		74.95€	0
4	Subtotal	·					164.85€	
5	Shipping Meth	hod	Postal Service					0
6	Payment Met	hod	Invoice					0
7	Tax Area		EU country					
8	Total Amount	t (incl. VAT)					164.85€	
9	Value Added	Tax: standard (16 %)					22.74 €	
)ur te lest re lilesto eutra 7743 Phone	items are also a erms and condition egards ones Demoshop igraben 1 3 Jena 1: +49-3641-573-11	GmbH -100	5					

Figure 87: Invoice view

If a line item number is marked with an asterisk (\*), this means that this product is also listed in other invoices belonging to this order.

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Table 71	: Fields	for an	invoice
----------	----------	--------	---------

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Print View	The print view is seen in a separate browser window	Link	
Invoice No.	This number is suggested by the system and consists of the order number and a running number for invoices.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1001-1

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Invoice Date	The creation date is automatically set. If you need to make manual changes, enter the desired date in the required format. Click to insert the current date.	Date field	19.04.05
Quantity	Adapting the order quantity to the invoice quantity	Entry field, numeric	2
0	Delete a line item	Link	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

**Note:** Always click **Save** after you enter the invoice number and invoice date since otherwise the current data will not be accepted into the print view.

**Note:** If you have included a note for the payment method, it is displayed with the sender data.

**Note:** When printing via the browser, depending on the browser settings, overlapping headers and footers (such as the base number, Internet address, date) may also be printed. You can change these settings. For Internet Explorer, click *File* >> *Page Setup* in the navigation bar. This has a *Header and Footer* section. The values entered here are printed on every page printed via the browser. If you do not wish to print any of this information, simply delete the entries in the two fields.

Always finish your editing by clicking **Finalize**. For more details, see *Finalizing Documents* on page 160.

## Credit Note

As with packing slips and invoices, you first need to generate a document of type *Credit Note* in order to issue a credit note. After this, click the type ID for credit note in order to edit the details. You can see the credit note details page in Figure 88.

Mulpenweg 2       Credit Note Date       \$/25/05       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       Date       \$         Mulpenweg 2       Credit Note Date       \$/25/05       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       Date       \$         Mulpenweg 2       Credit Note Date       \$/25/05       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       \$	VAT     Discount     TP       5 €     16%     -72.95 €     5       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     5
Nulpenweg 2       Credit Note       Date       S/25/05       Credit Note       Date	S/25/05         Image: Content of the system         S/24/0           5 €         16%         -72.95 €         Image: Content of the system           5 €         16%         -16.95 €         Image: Content of the system           5 €         16%         -74.95 €         Image: Content of the system
Digustadit / Thüringen         Deutschland         Thank you for your order:         No.       Quantity       Product No.       Name       UP       VAT       Discount       TP         1       Piece       # It_0401107001       Leatherman Tool Survi       -72.95 €       16%       -       -72.95 €       1         1       Piece       It_0401107001       Leatherman Tool Survi       -72.95 €       16%       -       -16.95 €       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       1       -       -       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       -       -       -       -       -       1       -       -       -       -       -       -       -       -	VAT         Discount         TP           5 €         16%         -72.95 €         3           5 €         16%         -16.95 €         3           5 €         16%         -74.95 €         3
No.         Quantity         Product No.         Name         UP         VAT         Discount         TP           1         Piece         It_0401107001         Leatherman Tool Survi         -72.95 €         16%         -72.95 €           2         1         Piece         It_0401107001         Mag Lite Mini         -16.95 €         16%         -16.95 €           3         1         Piece         It_0401102002         Deuter Hydro 2.0         -74.95 €         16%         -74.95 €           4         Subtotal         Image: Postal Service         Ima	5 €     16%     -72.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -16.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     ⊙
Thank you for your order:No.QuantityProduct No.NameUPVATDiscountTP1PieceIt_0401107001Leatherman Tool Survi $-72.95 \in$ 16% $-72.95 \in$ 21PieceIt_0401107001Mag Lite Mini $-16.95 \in$ 16% $-16.95 \in$ 31PieceIt_040212002Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ 16% $-74.95 \in$ 4SubtotalImage: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">VATDiscountTP1PieceIt_0401107001Leatherman Tool Survi $-72.95 \in$ 16% $-16.95 \in$ 31PieceIt_0402122002Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ 16% $-74.95 \in$ 4SubtotalImage: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">VATDiscount31PieceImage: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2" Image: Colspan="2"	5 €     16%     -72.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -16.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     ⊙
No.QuantityProduct No.NameUPVATDiscountTP11PieceIt_0401107001Leatherman Tool Survi $-72.95 \in$ 16% $-72.95 \in$ 21PieceIt_0401001001Mag Lite Mini $-16.95 \in$ 16% $-16.95 \in$ 31PieceIt_04e_3201212002Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ 16% $-74.95 \in$ 4SubtotalImage: Constraint of the second secon	5 €     16%     -72.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -16.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     ⊙
No.QuantityProduct No.NameUPVATDiscountTP11PieceIt_0401107001Leatherman Tool Survi $-72.95 \in$ $16\%$ $-72.95 \in$ 21PieceIt_040100001Mag Lite Mini $-16.95 \in$ $16\%$ $-16.95 \in$ 31PieceIt_040_20202Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ $16\%$ $-74.95 \in$ 4SubtotalImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the service5Shipping MethodPostal ServiceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the service6Payment MethodInvoiceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the service7Tax AreaEU countryImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the service8Total Amount (Incl. VAT)EU countryImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the serviceImage: Constrained on the service	5 €     16%     -72.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -16.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     ⊙
1       Piece       Image: It_0401107001       Leatherman Tool Survi $-72.95 \in$ 16% $-72.95 \in$ 2       1       Piece       Image: It_040110010       Mag Lite Mini $-16.95 \in$ 16% $-16.95 \in$ 3       1       Piece       Image: It_04011002       Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ 16% $-74.95 \in$ 4       Subtotal       Image: It_04011002       Deuter Hydro 2.0 $-74.95 \in$ 16% $-74.95 \in$ 5       Subtotal       Image: It_04011000       Postal Service       Image: It_04000       Image: It_040000 $-164.85 \in$ 5       Shipping Method       Image: It_0400000       Image: It_0400000       Image: It_04000000       Image: It_0400000000000000000000000000000000000	5 €     16%     -72.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -16.95 €     ⊙       5 €     16%     -74.95 €     ⊙
1       Piece       Image: Ima	5 €         16%         -16.95 €         ⊙           5 €         16%         -74.95 €         ⊙
3       1       Piece       Image: Constraint of the second of the sec	5 € 16% -74.95 € <b>`</b> 3
4       Subtotal       Postal Service       Image: Constraint of the service         5       Shipping Method       Postal Service       Image: Constraint of the service         6       Payment Method       Invoice       Image: Constraint of the service         7       Tax Area       EU country       Image: Constraint of the service         8       Total Amount (incl. VAT)       Image: Constraint of the service       Image: Constraint of the service	¥
Shipping Method     Postal Service     Image: Constraint of the service       6     Payment Method     Invoice     Image: Constraint of the service       7     Tax Area     EU country     Image: Constraint of the service       8     Total Amount (incl. VAT)     Image: Constraint of the service	-164.85€
6     Payment Method     Invoice     Invoice       7     Tax Area     EU country     Image: Country Country       8     Total Amount (incl. VAT)     Image: Country Country Country Country	
7     Tax Area     EU country     Image: Country       8     Total Amount (incl. VAT)     Image: Country     Image: Country	<u></u>
8         Total Amount (incl. VAT)         -164.85 €	<u></u>
9 Value Added Tax: standard (16 %) -22.74 £	-164.85€
	-22.74 €
* These items are also available on other credit notes.	

Figure 88: Credit note view

Edit the credit note as you would an invoice. For more basic information, see *Invoice* on page 157.

## **Finalizing Documents**

If you would like to save your documents in an inalterable state, you can use the **Finalize** function.

After clicking *Finalize*, documents can still displayed and printed but they can no longer be edited or deleted.

In this way after finalizing the corresponding process, you can save all of your documents in the system in a tamper-proof state.

You will have to create new documents for possible amendments and corrections.

# General WorldPay Information

The company WorldPay (http://www.WorldPay.de) belongs to the Royal Bank of Scotland Group. They provide electronic payment solutions. The *WorldPay* payment method offers an interface between your shop and the WorldPay payment system. With this, you can offer payment options for your shop by credit card and, within Germany, by direct debit. WorldPay checks the customer's payment data and only permits transactions with secure data.

<u>Note</u>: Since the recording and processing of an end customer's payment data is performed by WorldPay, you as the merchant are not involved in the handling of this sensitive data and therefore cannot be held liable.

## Registration with WorldPay

Two registrations are necessary. You must first register as a merchant and go through the registration process. This qualifies you for an installation ID and access to the WorldPay administration area. After this, you can configure your shop for the *WorldPay* payment method. For more details, see *Payment Method with* WorldPay on page 50. After you set up and test the payment method, you need to have WorldPay release your shop.

Only after this can you offer your customers this payment method in your shop and display the WorldPay logo with the accepted credit cards.

Since the basic settings have already been made by your service provider, all the necessary Internet addresses are available to you. You can find these in the settings for the *WorldPay* payment method. See *Payment Method with* WorldPay on page 50 as well as Figure 89.

Payment Methods + Cree	ayment Methods 🗧 Credit Card via WorldPay			
General Settings 🛸				
1. Register at WorldPay				
2. To your WorldPay Adm	inistration			
Data for configuring the	WorldPay installation			
Installation ID		4)		
Callback URL	http://pdomin.jena.epages.c	de/epages/Store.storefront//?		
	ObjectPath=/Shops/DemoSh	op&ChangeAction=PaymentCallba	ackWorldPay&ChangeAction=BlockMonitor	
Callback Password				
3. Settings for Payment Pr	ocessing			
For entries for payment	<ul> <li>Go to the WorldPay Serv</li> </ul>	rer		
	C Embed the form in the s	ihop (use iFrame)		
Transaction is finalized	Manually in the Wor	rldPay Administration ⊻		
Operational Mode	Test mode-OK	×		
4. Activate Your WorldPa	y Account			
5. Select credit cards				
Show the accepted credit c		_	_	
Visa	Mastercard	Eurocard	American Express	
Diners	📃 ЈСВ	Solo	Switch	
Laser	📉 Visa Delta	Visa Electron		
Related Topics → Navigation				
Save				

Figure 89: Settings for WorldPay

## Testing a WorldPay Transaction

Since this payment procedure is completed and checked by an external system, it is recommended that you test this payment method before you provide it to your customers. Enter a corresponding test mode ID in the *Text Mode* field. See also *Payment Method with* WorldPay on page 50.

## Finalizing the Transaction with WorldPay

In the payment method settings, you can configure whether you would like to manually finalize a transaction or whether this should happen automatically. For more on this, see *Payment Method with* WorldPay on page 50.

The *Automatically with Order* option means that the transaction is finalized as soon as the customer has entered and confirmed the payment information. After this, the amount is immediately booked from the customer's account.

If you have selected the *Manually in the WorldPay Administration* option, the withdrawal of the amount from the customer's account does not occur until after you have finalized the order in your WorldPay account. To do this, open the *To your WorldPay Administration* link in Figure 89 your account with WorldPay.

## WorldPay Transactions

The *Amount* column shows the value from the basket; the *Auth. amount* is the value in the currency that the customer paid to WorldPay.

In the *AVS* column, you can read the AVS Code for the transaction. The AVS code (Address Verification System) is a four-digit number used to show how and with what result customer data was verified. This code is displayed for each WorldPay transaction. Not all WorldPay accesses support this AVS code. It depends on the customer's bank and the type of contract you signed with WorldPay.

The code structure and the meaning of the individual areas are found in the *AVS Code* area in the lower part of the page.

# WorldPay Order Searches

There is a special search mask for WorldPay orders. You can search based on two criteria, by the transaction number and the time frame during which the transaction took place. For more about searches, see *Search* on page 144.

# T-Pay

## T-Pay allgemein

T-Pay ist das Bezahlsystem der Deutschen Telekom. Den Kunden werden verschiedene sichere Varianten angeboten. Diese reichen von der Benutzung von Guthabenkarten bis zur Zahlung per Kreditkarte. Die Kunden werden für den Bezahlvorgang auf das T-Pay-System geleitet, wo die Transaktionsdaten erfasst werden. Sie als Händler müssen die Transaktion in Ihrer Shop-Administration abschließend auslösen. Voraussetzung für die Nutzung dieses Bezahlsystems ist eine Registrierung der Kunden und von Ihnen als Händler bei T-Pay. Alle Informationen zum Thema T-Pay finden Sie unter <u>www.t-pay.de</u>.

Für das Shop-System sind die Bezahlvarianten *Micromoney*, *Telekom-Rechnung*, *Lastschrift* und *Kreditkarte* eingerichtet.

Zur Händler-Registrierung und Einstellung aller erforderlichen Parameter in der Shop-Administration sowie zum Testen lesen Sie *Payment Method via* T-Pay, Seite 54.

## Zahlungsvorgang aus Sicht des Kunden

Der Kunde wählt während des Bestellvorganges die Zahlungsmethode auf Basis *T-Pay* aus. Im nachfolgenden Prozess wird er auf die Seiten von T-Pay geleitet. Dort werden ihm die von Ihnen freigegebenen Bezahlvarianten angezeigt, von denen er eine auswählt. Danach muss er sich identifizieren. Nach erfolgreicher Anmeldung gibt er je nach ausgewählter Zahlungsvariante die erforderlichen Daten ein. Abschließend überprüft er alle Daten in einer Übersicht und bestätigt die Transaktion, siehe Abbildung 90.

Bezahlen	Bezahlvarianten		Anmeldung	Bezahlen	Quittung
re Buchungsdaten					
Datum / Uhrzeit			14.04.2005 / 10:45	:33	
Transaktions-ID			217-425E2DABAC	14142AACF4	
Bezahlverfahren			Telekom-Rechnun	g	
Händler			epages		
Warenwert			0.01 EUR		
Artikel			Milestones		
ırch Klick auf "Weiter" wird der Be	zahlvorgang abgeschlossen. Unter <u>www.t-co</u>	m.de/t-pay/l	<sub>ogin</sub> können Sie Ihre 1	Transaktionen einsehen.	

Abbildung 90: Prüfen und Bestätigung der Transaktion durch den Kunden

Danach wird er wieder in Ihren Shop zurück geleitet und bekommt hier die Bestellbestätigung angezeigt. Diese enthält die Zahlungsmethode und die Transaktions-ID, die durch T-Pay vergeben wurde:



Abbildung 91: Bestellbestätigung mit T-Pay-Transaktions-ID

## **T-Pay-Transaktionen**

Nachdem der Kunde die Transaktion bestätigt hat, wird diese in die Liste der T-Pay-Transaktionen eingetragen.

Die Spalte *Status* informiert Sie über den aktuellen Stand der Transaktion. Lesen Sie dazu *Auslösen der Transaktion*, unten.

## Auslösen der Transaktion

Wenn einer Ihrer Kunden eine T-Pay-Transaktion auf dem T-Pay-System erfolgreich beendet hat, wird diese Transaktion mit dem Status *Autorisiert* in die Liste der T-Pay-Transaktionen eingestellt. Das bedeutet, dass der Kunde von seiner Seite aus die Transaktion für gültig und abgeschlossen erklärt hat. Damit erfolgt aber noch keine Zahlung an Sie als Händler. Sie müssen die Transaktion von Ihrer Seite her auslösen.

Dazu markieren Sie in der Tabelle die Transaktionen, die Sie auslösen möchten und klicken auf **Zahlung auslösen**. Erst nach dieser Aktion erfolgt die Zahlung an Sie. In der Tabelle wird für die betreffenden Transaktionen der Status auf *Bezahlt* gesetzt und das jeweilige Kontrollkästchen deaktiviert.

# Suche nach T-Pay-Transaktionen

Mit Hilfe einer Suche können Sie Ihre T-Pay-Transaktionen gruppieren und filtern. Dabei können Sie nach drei Kriterien filtern, nach der Transaktions-Nr., dem Status und dem Zeitraum, in dem die Transaktion durchgeführt wurde.

Ansonsten entspricht die Suche für T-Pay-Transaktionen der allgemeinen Suche für alle Bestellungen. Wie prinzipiell mit der Suche gearbeitet wird, lesen Sie im Kapitel *Search*, Seite 144.

# 10. Marketing

This module provides the functions for starting sales-promotion activities, for building and strengthening customer loyalty, and for providing all your users with important and useful information about all the aspects of your shop.

# Newsletter Campaigns

The newsletter addressees are managed by campaign, meaning they receive all the newsletters from a particular campaign. Addressees are not assigned to specific newsletters, but instead to campaigns.

View the details for the specific campaigns by clicking the ID.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Table 72. Table e	mhals for	nowclottor	compoigne
Table 72: Table sy	/11100151011	lewsleller	campaigns

Symbol	Meaning
۲	Blue symbol: Campaign is active and therefore visible in the shop; customers can sign up for it.
3	Gray symbol: The campaign is not active and therefore not visible in the shop; customers cannot sign up for it. However, the corresponding newsletter can still be sent. Addressees are customers that were assigned in the administration area.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

## Creating a Newsletter Campaign

Enter an ID and a name for the campaign.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Click the ID to edit the details of this campaign.

## Newsletter Campaigns - Details - General

The general details contain parameters, which describe the campaign and are also the default newsletter settings.

#### Marketing

General 📚 Nev	vsletters Addressees
ID	NewProducts_EN
/isible	⊙ Yes ◯ No
Name	New Ideas at the Milestones Shop
Description	
	Learn more about new products and services in our shop each month.
Language	English 💟 🚯
Sender Name	Milestones Team
Sender E-mail	info@epages.de
Test E-mail	
Subject	New Ideas at the Milestones Shop

Figure 92: General details for newsletter campaigns

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	NewProducts_DE
Visible		Option button	
Name	Name used to display the campaign. This is language dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric, max. 255 characters	New ideas at Milestones
Description	Descriptive text for the campaign displayed in the shop. This is language-dependent. For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text Field	Every month, we'll let you know how we have expanded our selection of products and services.
Language	Language used for the campaign. One feature is the language selection called <i>International</i> . Campaigns created with this option are valid for all languages.	Drop-down menu	
Sender Name	Together with the sender's e-mail address, this comprises an extended e- mail address: for example, Milestones Team <info@provider.de></info@provider.de>	Entry field, alphanumeric	Milestones Team
Sender E-mail	This address is used as the default sender for all campaign newsletters; however, it can be overwritten for each newsletter.	Entry field, alphanumeric	Info@provider.de

Table 73: General fields for a newsletter campaign

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Test E-mail	Every newsletter in the campaign uses this address for test newsletters. See <i>Newsletter Details</i> – General on page 170 – <i>Test Newsletter</i> .	Entry field, alphanumeric	test@provider.de
Subject	This subject is used as the default setting for all newsletters; however, it can be adapted for each newsletter.	Entry field, alphanumeric, max. 255 characters	New ideas at Milestones

Save your entries by clicking Save.

## Newsletter Campaigns – Details – Newsletter

To open the details for a newsletter, click the ID.

You can also create new newsletters and run batch processing actions in the table.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Table 74: Status for the newsletter

Symbol	Meaning
Ŷ	The newsletter has not yet been sent.
<b>\$</b>	The newsletter has not yet been sent, however a sending date has been entered on which the newsletter will automatically be sent.
**	The newsletter has been sent. Changes can no longer be made. However, you can still duplicate the newsletter.

The following symbols supplement the status symbols and apply to the send date:

### Table 75: Symbols for the send date

Symbol	Meaning
0	No send date was entered. The newsletter has not yet been sent.
$\geq$	The planned send date has been entered.
0	This is the date when the newsletter was sent.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Table 76: Special batch processing actions for newsletters

Action	Comment
Duplicate	The send date and subscriber list will not be applied.

## Creating a New Newsletter

Create a new newsletter by filling out the entry fields in the last row of the table. In the first field, enter the ID for the newsletter. In the second field, enter the display name for the current language.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

All additional data is recorded in the details as described in the following chapter. To do so, click the ID of the newsletter.

D	BooksAndMaps	Use HTML	• Yes • No
ame	Announcement: Books and maps	Subject	Travel literature in Milestones sho
Text		000,000	
Ve are excited to s	eed the right travel literature. oon offer your travel guides and maps. <l destinations?="" for="" information="" n<="" specific="" td="" wri=""><td></td><td>Placeholder E-Mail Display Name Gender Salutation Title First Name Last Name Street City ZIP / Postal Code</td></l>		Placeholder E-Mail Display Name Gender Salutation Title First Name Last Name Street City ZIP / Postal Code
Add Products ar	d Categories from Object Tray		
ender Name	Milestones Team	Sender E-mail	info@epages.de
ending Date		Sent Date	Not yet Sent
est E-mail	Not Entered for this Campaign	Coupon Campaign	(Select Entry) 💟

Figure 93: Newsletter details

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	BooksAndMaps
Name	Name used to display the newsletter. This is language dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric, max. 255 characters	Announcement: Books and cards
Use HTML	In the text format, all HTML commands will appear as text.	Option button	
Subject	Used as a subject in the newsletter e- mail message.	Entry field, alphanumeric, max. 255 characters	Travel literature at Milestones

### Table 77: Fields for newsletters

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Text	Newsletter Content For more information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26. For more on this, see <i>Creating</i> <i>Newsletter Content</i> below.	Text Field	In every tour, you need not only the right equipment bus also the right travel literature. We are excited
Add Products and Categories from Tray	Use this function to add product information to the newsletter. For more information on the tray, see <i>Tray</i> on page 19.	Link	
Sender Name	Together with the sender's e-mail address, this comprises an extended e- mail address: for example, Milestones Team <info@provider.de></info@provider.de>	Entry field, alphanumeric	Milestones Team
Sender E-mail		Entry field, alphanumeric	info@provider.de
Sending Date	Time at which the newsletter is automatically sent.	Date field	10.5.2005 08:30
Sent Date		Display	
Test E-mail	Use this function to test the mailing of the newsletter as well as the layout and design of the e-mail message as a recipient. To do this, click the symbol after the entry field.		<u>balu@provider.de</u>
Coupon Campaign	For adding coupon information to the newsletter. After selecting and saving, two new functions are activated for it. For more details, see <i>Coupons</i> on page 176 and especially <i>Using Coupons in</i> <i>Newsletters</i> on page 179.	Drop-down menu	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Sending a Newsletter

The newsletter can be sent in two ways. You can enter a send date and finish with **Save**.

Or you can use the **Send Now** function. Any send date that happens to be indicated is ignored.

After the newsletter has been sent, the corresponding data can no longer be changed and the newsletter cannot be sent again.

### **Creating Newsletter Content**

The text field contains a section that allows the customer to unsubscribe from the newsletter. This should be a component of every newsletter.

**Note:** You should not delete this part of the newsletter since it is fairly standard to inform customers of the option of unsubscribing.

Take advantage of all your options to send attractive, informative, and personalized newsletters.

You want to present the appropriate products in the newsletter and at the same time, personally address your customers. To do this, proceed as follows:

Select the products that you wish to present and add them to the tray. For more information about working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19. Insert these products in the newsletter by using the **Add Products and Categories from the Tray** link.

The name, description, price, a small picture, and any variations of the selected product are automatically inserted at the cursor position.

The pictures are assigned to the newsletter as attachments and a reference to them is entered in the text.

Use placeholders for customer data to address the customers personally. To insert a placeholder in the *Text* field, click the name. This is immediately copied into the field at the current cursor position. To expand the example with a personal introduction, see Figure 94.

Newsletter Campaign	s ← New Ideas at the Milestones	s Shop + Announcemen	t: Books and maps																						
General 👰 Attach	ments Recipients																								
ID	BooksAndMaps	Use HTML	⊙ Yes ) No																						
Name	Announcement: Books and maps	Subject	Travel literature in Milestones sho																						
Text																									
BACKGROUND: #e5e7 #ababab 1px solid"> <tbody> <tr> <td font-sizi<br="" style="PADDING-&lt;br&gt;10px; MARGIN: 5px; 1&lt;br&gt;&lt;H1 style=">informsDe <p>in every tour you prices. Please coi <p>Your Milestones-to <hr/> &lt;1 Product Snippet: <div class="ProductDe&lt;br&gt;&lt;h1&gt;Deuter Hydro 2&lt;br&gt;&lt;div class=" imagea<="" td=""><td>Deuter Hydro 2.0&gt; atails"&gt; .0 or"&gt;</td></div></p></p></td><td>d; WIDTH: 100%; BORDER FONT-SIZE: 12px; PADDING arial"&gt; ne=top&gt;Milestones Address.LastName, ited to offer special backpa</td><td>-BOTTOM: E-Mail Display Name S-BOTTOM: Salutation nite Erst Name Last Name</td></tr><tr><td>Sender Name</td><td>Milestones Team</td><td>Sender E-mail</td><td>info@epages.de</td></tr><tr><td>Sending Date</td><td></td><td>Sent Date</td><td>Not yet Sent</td></tr><tr><td>Test E-mail</td><td>p.domin@epages.de 🔀</td><td>Coupon Campaign</td><td>(Select Entry) 💟</td></tr><tr><td colspan="5">Related Topics • Coupon Campaigns Creation of campaigns in order to insert coupon codes in newsletters</td></tr><tr><td>Save</td><td>end Now (1)</td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody>	informsDe <p>in every tour you prices. Please coi <p>Your Milestones-to <hr/> &lt;1 Product Snippet: <div class="ProductDe&lt;br&gt;&lt;h1&gt;Deuter Hydro 2&lt;br&gt;&lt;div class=" imagea<="" td=""><td>Deuter Hydro 2.0&gt; atails"&gt; .0 or"&gt;</td></div></p></p>	Deuter Hydro 2.0> atails"> .0 or">	d; WIDTH: 100%; BORDER FONT-SIZE: 12px; PADDING arial"> ne=top>Milestones Address.LastName, ited to offer special backpa	-BOTTOM: E-Mail Display Name S-BOTTOM: Salutation nite Erst Name Last Name	Sender Name	Milestones Team	Sender E-mail	info@epages.de	Sending Date		Sent Date	Not yet Sent	Test E-mail	p.domin@epages.de 🔀	Coupon Campaign	(Select Entry) 💟	Related Topics • Coupon Campaigns Creation of campaigns in order to insert coupon codes in newsletters					Save	end Now (1)		
informsDe <p>in every tour you prices. Please coi <p>Your Milestones-to <hr/> &lt;1 Product Snippet: <div class="ProductDe&lt;br&gt;&lt;h1&gt;Deuter Hydro 2&lt;br&gt;&lt;div class=" imagea<="" td=""><td>Deuter Hydro 2.0&gt; atails"&gt; .0 or"&gt;</td></div></p></p>	Deuter Hydro 2.0> atails"> .0 or">	d; WIDTH: 100%; BORDER FONT-SIZE: 12px; PADDING arial"> ne=top>Milestones Address.LastName, ited to offer special backpa	-BOTTOM: E-Mail Display Name S-BOTTOM: Salutation nite Erst Name Last Name																						
Sender Name	Milestones Team	Sender E-mail	info@epages.de																						
Sending Date		Sent Date	Not yet Sent																						
Test E-mail	p.domin@epages.de 🔀	Coupon Campaign	(Select Entry) 💟																						
Related Topics • Coupon Campaigns Creation of campaigns in order to insert coupon codes in newsletters																									
Save	end Now (1)																								

Figure 94: Text using personal data

Now the results are as follows:

n: ePages Info	Gesendet: Mi 25.05.2005 15:14
m.mustermann	
reff: Travel literature in Milestones shop	
Milestones informs	
Dear Herr Mustermann,	
n every tour you need the right backpack. We are excited to offer special backpacks for low prices. Please come in our store in Neustadt or visit our online-shop	
Your Milestones-team	
Deuter Hydro 2.0 We for 2004. A small drinking system pack with back cooling. Because the backpack stands out from your back shoulder-padding system and belt keep the weight on your hips, where it belongs. Total volume: 4 Liters. Reflect 74.95 € Show this product in the shop	
<sup>Order Number Price</sup> Deuter Kangaroo	
This 24 liter backpack transforms instantly into a child-carrying solution to handle those small needs on long hik 39.95 € \$99.95 Show this product in the shop <b>Order Number Price</b>	es. Especially useful for children under 12.

Figure 95: Personalized newsletter with product data

**Note:** For customers who subscribed to the newsletter as non-registered users, you can only use the placeholder for the display name. No data are stored for the other placeholders.

## **Newsletter Details – Attachments**

If you also used the tray to insert images with the product and catalog data, these images will be saved as attachments to the newsletter and a reference to them will be generated in the text in the *Text* field.

If you click the name of the file, the image is displayed. If you do not wish to send any images, delete the pictures from the attachment list as well as the corresponding link in the text.

**Note:** This deletes the assignment of the image as an attachment, but does not delete the product image itself. This remains associated with the product.

## **Newsletter Details – Recipients**

This overview lists all the customers to whom the newsletter was sent.

Along with the name, the e-mail address where the newsletter was sent, and the time it was sent are also displayed. If there is a large number of recipients, this time may deviate slightly from the planned send time.

# Newsletter Campaigns – Details – Addressees

Only the customers in this list can receive the campaign newsletter. The customer should subscribe to the newsletter himself. However, if necessary, the administrator can assign customers to a newsletter campaign.

### Subscriptions for Registered Users

Registered users can view the available campaigns in the shop in the *My Account* section under *Newsletter* and can subscribe to the newsletter. See Figure 96.

			age » Contact information » Contact » T	erms and Conditi	ons » Custor		
Categories	My Acc	count » Newslette	rs			Shopping Basket	
Jackets Shoes		Name	Description	Language	Status	1 Deuter Hy Total Amount	0.01
Backpacks Tents		Neue Ideen bei Milestones	Erfahren Sie jeden Monat, mit welchen Produkten und Leistungen wir unser Sortiment für Sie erweitern.	Deutsch	8	+ St	now Baskel Addresse
Equipment Product Search		New Ideas at the Milestones Shop	Learn more about new products and services in our shop each month.	English	0	Max Mustermann + My Account + Sign out	
→ Advanced Search	Subsc	ribe Unsubscribe				Currency Selection	on
						€ (Euro)	
Special Offers						\$ (US Dollar)	

Figure 96: Subscribing to the newsletter for registered users

Due to security reasons, the customer receives an e-mail message that asks him to confirm that he has subscribed to the newsletter. This is to avoided unauthorized people from subscribing to the newsletter. Unsubscribing from newsletter is done the same way. Only after the customer has confirmed unsubscribing by e-mail is his status for the corresponding newsletter set to *Unsubscribed*.

<u>Note</u>: The subscription and unsubscription of newsletters and the corresponding confirmations are events for which the system sends e-mail confirmations. You need to activate the associated e-mail events.

For e-mail events, see *E-mail Settings* - Events on page 37. If you, as the administrator, assign customers to newsletters, then no event is triggered.

### Subscriptions for Non-Registered Users

Unregistered customers can also subscribe to newsletters. For them to do this, you as the merchant must set up the navigation element *Sign in*, *Navigation* on page 133. This provides the Subscribe to Newsletter link in the shop.

## Addressee List

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Symbol	Meaning
<u>&amp;</u>	The addressee is a registered customer who has subscribed to the newsletter.
<u>.</u>	The addressee is a registered customer who has unsubscribed from the newsletter.
8	The addressee is not a registered customer and signed in as a subscriber to this newsletter.
6	The addressee is not a registered customer and unsubscribed from this newsletter.

### Table 78: Status symbols for the addressee list

There are two ways to add new addressees:

### Manually Entering Addressees

Enter the name in the first entry field in the last table row and enter the new recipient address in the second entry field.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

### Adding from the Tray

Use this method to add registered users to the campaign. To use the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

For registered customers, deleting from the list only removes the assignment to the campaign. The rest of the customer data remains intact.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Subscribe	Set the status to <i>Subscribed</i> .
Unsubscribe	Set the status to Unsubscribed.
Delete	For registered customers, this is the removal of the assignment to the campaign. Unregistered customers are deleted from the system for this campaign.

#### Table 79: Special batch processing actions for addressee administration

<u>Caution</u>: Deleting also deletes subscription status (*subscribed*, *unsubscribed*) for the corresponding customer. If one of the customers is added to the campaign later, the status is automatically set to *subscribed*. This can lead to legal problems if a customer receives a newsletter from which he had actually unsubscribed. Think about this before deleting a customer from the addressee list.

## **Importing Addressees**

You can use this function to load subscriber lists prepared elsewhere.

The data must exist in a simple text file where individual values are separated by semicolons. See Figure 97 for an example of this kind of file.



Figure 97: Addressees import file

The title row shows the sequence of the data. Start the import in the *Import Addressees* section. Enter the name of the file with the path information in the *Import File* field on the page or use the **Browse** function to find the file and enter its name in the field.

To begin the import, click Import.

# Coupons

A coupon campaign contains all the necessary settings, requirements, and codes for offering coupons.

<u>Note:</u> Coupon campaigns can always only be created for one currency. For the same action in another currency, you need to also create a separate campaign.

The *Redeemed* column is a good indicator of the success of your marketing tactics, since you can see here how well the coupon campaign was accepted.

Click the ID to open the details of the coupon campaign.

You can create a new campaign in the table. To do this, enter the ID and name of the new coupon campaign. Define for which currency the coupons will be issued and credited.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23.

**Note:** All coupons that are left over in the possession of customers after the deletion of a campaign and are not redeemed, lose their validity and are no longer recognized by the system.

# Coupon Campaign – General

	ons Coupon Codes		
ID		Time period	
NewPayment		5/1/05 8:00 AM 🔐 - 5/31/05 10:00 PM	)
English Name		Translation Deutsch 💌	
New payment method			
Description ④			
	nt method - "Cash on delivery". Using will be sponsored with coupon.		
Currency	ε	Coupon code length 24 💟	
	() 5.00 € €	Number of valid Coupons	
Absolute value	0 <b>%</b>		
Absolute value Percentage value Only waive shipping	<ul><li>○</li><li>○</li><li>%</li></ul>	Redemption voids coupon 💿 Yes 🔿 No	

Figure 98: General details for coupon campaigns

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
ID		Entry field, alphanumeric	NewPayment
Time Period	Time frame of validity for the coupons in the campaign. It is necessary to enter the date and time.	Date field	05/01/05 00:00
	Use the symbols 💷 next to every date field to enter the current date along with the time.		
Name	Name used to display the campaign. This is language dependent.	Entry field, alphanumeric	New payment method
Description	Description of the campaign. This is language dependent. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYS/WYG</i> Editor on page 26.	Text field	Using the new payment method "cash on delivery" is rewarded with a coupon.
Currency		Display	
Absolute value	Absolute amount per coupon	Option button + entry field, numeric	€ 4

## Table 80: Parameters for coupons

Field name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Percentage Value	Value of the coupon is proportional to the value of the goods in the shopping basket	Option button + entry field, numeric	5 %
Only waive shipping		Option button	
Minimum order value	Shopping basket value at which the coupon can be redeemed.	Entry field, numeric	50€
Coupon code length	Variable length of the coupon code for different uses and security levels	Drop-down menu	16
Number of valid coupons	Number of coupons that should be accepted by the system.	Entry field, numeric	100
Redemption voids coupon	Use this option to control whether coupons can be redeemed more than once or not. If the <i>Yes</i> option has been selected, each coupon can be used only once.	Option button	

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

<u>Note:</u> You can only edit the parameters on this page if no coupon code has yet been generated. If codes exist, changes can no longer be saved. If you would like to edit the values again, you need to delete the coupon code.

*Caution:* An entry field for entering the coupon code is made available to the customer in the shopping basket. However, this field is only then displayed if there is a least one coupon campaign valid for the current time frame.

# Coupon Campaign – Condition

You can link the validity of the coupons to certain conditions. For example, you can configure a coupon so that it can only be redeemed if the customer has used a certain payment method.

The list shows the items that are limited to a specific coupon. This means that only if this item is active in the order process will the coupon be credited.

<u>Note</u>: The items subject to different conditions or that are of various types are "AND linked", that is, they must be used together by the customer.

The different items are inserted into the table from the tray. For more information on the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

# Coupon Campaign - Coupon Codes

After you have edited all the basic settings and perhaps defined conditions, you need to generate the coupon codes for the campaign in order to make them available for your customers. This is necessary if you do not plan on distributing the codes to your customers per newsletter.

You can generate the character strings automatically. Enter the number of codes that you want to generate into the *Code Generator* field. Start the process by clicking **Generate**.

Or, if you want, you can also create the codes manually. This is an option if you want your codes to have a specific structure, for example, that the code always starts with the same letter combination. Enter the code in the entry field in the last table row and then click Save.

<u>Note</u>: As soon as you have generated coupon codes, you can no longer modify the basic settings on the *General* page. If you would like to be able to change the parameters again, you need to delete all the coupons.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Table 81: Special batch processing actions for coupon codes

Action	Comment
Export all coupon codes	For saving all the coupon codes in a text file for use in external systems.

**Note:** Deleted coupon codes lose their validity and can no longer be redeemed.

## Using Coupons in Newsletters

For basic information on newsletters, see *Newsletter* Campaigns on page 167.

<u>Note:</u> You do not need to generate any coupon codes. The system generates a new code for each newsletter that is sent.

It is important that after you create the newsletter that you select and assign the coupon campaign. See Figure 99.

	Attachments Recipients		
ID	NewPayment	Use HTML	💿 Yes 🔘 No
Name	New payment method	Subject	New Ideas at the Milestones Shop
Text			
 <body> &gt; <!-- Unsubscr<br-->#IF(#BillingA. To unsubscr which newslette #ELSE To unsubscr and then choos #ENDIF</body>	d:newsletter_stylesheet.css" rel="style ibe Snippet START> idress) ibe from this newsletter, click the link l rs you wish to subscribe to or unsubsc ibe from this newsletter, use the link t se which newsletters you wish to subscr ://pdomin.jena.epages.de/epages/St	below. Then click 'My Account' ribe from. pelow. Then click 'Unsubscribe ibe to or unsubscribe from.	Street City
ObjectPath=/Si Unsubscr<br <br	ops/DemoShop">Go to Shop ibe Snippet END> ts and Categories from Object Tray		
ObjectPath=/Si Unsubscr<br <br	nops/DemoShop">Go to Shop ibe Snippet END>	Sender E-mail	info@epages.de
ObjectPath=/Si Unsubscr<br <br Add Product Sender Name	hops/DemoShop">Go to Shop ibe Snippet END> ts and Categories from Object Tray	Sender E-mail	Not yot Coot

Figure 99: Selecting a coupon campaign for the newsletter

After selecting the campaign and clicking **Save**, you have special functions available to your newsletter: a new placeholder for the coupon code and the option of displaying coupon campaign information. How this is done is shown in Figure 100.
	ns + New Ideas at the Milest	ones Shop + New paym	ent method
General 🖗 Attac	hments Recipients		
You have select			
ID Name Text	NewPayment New payment method	Use HTML Subject	<ul> <li>Yes O No</li> <li>New Ideas at the Milestones Shop</li> </ul>
sponsored with coup Coupon with a va  coupon Code: #C  Unsubscribe Si<br #IF(#BillingAddress 	method itor"> aa"> ayment method - "Cash on deliver on. slue of 5.00 € CouponCode nippet START>	elow. Then click 'My Account	Title First Name Last Name Street City ZID / Destal Code Coupon Code
Sender Name	Milestones Team	Sender E-mail	info@epages.de
Sending Date Test E-mail	p.domin@epages.de 🔀	Coupon Campaig	Not yet Sent
Related Topics			
Save	Send Now (6)		

Figure 100: Integrating coupon information into the newsletter

You have two options. If you would like send to the coupon code, place the *Coupon Code* placeholder in the newsletter text. When the newsletter is sent, a separate coupon code is generated and entered for each customer.

The other option is to use a coupon template. Here you add not only the code but also additional information about the coupon campaign. This information includes the name and description of the coupon campaign, the price reduction the coupon is providing, and the coupon code itself.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

## Pangora

Pangora is a product search engine for shopping on the Internet. Examples of shopping areas are: <a href="http://shopping.t-online.de/">http://shopping.t-online.de/</a>, <a href="http://shopping.tl.de">http://shopping.tl.de</a> or <a href="http://shopping.tl.de">http://shoppin

The prerequisite is that you register with Pangora. For this, you can use the corresponding function on <u>www.pangora.de</u> or the link **Register with Pangora**. The Pangora export function lets you generate a product list in Pangora format and save it on the server as an XML file. This file is then read by Pangora and processed accordingly. Without registration, export can be started, but Pangora will not process the data.

You will first see the page with the active country settings for which an export can be run. You can export products for the countries listed in the table. The generally available countries can be selected from the drop-down menu in the last row of the table.

Pangora currently offers an export for the following countries:

- Germany
- United Kingdom
- Italy
- France
- Austria

These countries are stored in the program. The prerequisite for activating one of these countries is that the corresponding regional settings, language, and currency must be present. See *Country* Settings on page 36.

**Note:** Even after being deleted from the table, the country entry is still available in the drop-down menu. The country is only completely removed from the drop-down menu when you delete the corresponding regional settings *Country* Settings on page 36.

## Pangora Export – General Properties

General 👰 Product	ts		 	
Register with Pangora				
MerchantID	132456			
ID				
	en_GB			
Language	English			
Currency	£			
Automatically Add to Ba	asket 🔿 Yes 💿 No			
Shipping Method	Postal Service	~		
Image	List View Image	~		
Promotional Text	Description	~		
	Long Description	~		
Description	LONG Description	Y		

Figure 101: General settings for a Pangora export for a specific country

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Register with Pangora		Link	
Merchant ID	You receive this ID when you register with Pangora.	Entry field, alphanumeric	1234
ID	Regional setting	Display	en_EN

#### Table 82: Fields for Pangora export settings

Field Name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Language		Display	German
Currency		Display	€
Automatically Add to Basket	The product is added to the basket as soon as a customer is forwarded over the external product link into the shop.	Option button	
Shipping Method	The price for the method you select here is displayed together with the product on the external site.	Drop-down menu	
Image	All the attachments for the product are listed in this drop-down menu. An image file is expected for the export. <i>If you wish to include other file types</i> <i>with the product type, such as PDF</i> <i>files, then you may only select one</i> <i>image file from the drop-down menu.</i>		
Promotional Text	A short description of the product, max. 25 characters.	Drop-down menu	
Description	A description of the product, max. 4,000 characters.	Drop-down menu	
Export File	Link to the export file. For more on this, see <i>Export</i> below.	Link	

Save your entries by clicking Save.

Note: If one of the fields *ID*, *Language*, or *Currency* is empty, the export will not be successful.

### Pangora Export – Products

Along with the general settings, you must determine which products are to be exported.

To enter products in the export list, you must add them from the product overview to the tray. See *Tray* on page 19.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Remove Assignment	If you remove products from the export list, the products themselves are not deleted.
Assign All Products	All the shop products are immediately included in the export list.

Table 83: Special batch processing actions for Pangora export

### Export

Start the export of the prepared product list into Pangora format on the **General** page. See Figure 101. To do this, click **Export**.

When this is finished, you are returned to the general properties page. This now contains a link to the exported file. See Figure 101.

### Pangora Export Errors

When products are included in the export file, the system checks whether all the restrictions for the Pangora export have been met. If a product does not fulfill one of the criteria, an error is displayed after the process is complete. There are two classes of errors: simple errors where the data can be automatically corrected in such a way that the product can be exported, and serious errors where the product cannot be exported.

After a process is completed, you will get an error message for each error. Then you can edit and correct the data accordingly.

If errors occur, the error messages will provide additional details. To display the details, click the **Details** link.

# Kelkoo

Kelkoo offers a product search engine that is available on the Internet. Here you can add your products there so that customers searching for products at <u>www.kelkoo.de</u> also see your products. Your products are sorted into the Kelkoo product catalog structure. Your products will appear in these categories with a link directly to your shop together with products from other suppliers.

To be able to export your products to Kelkoo, you must register with Kelkoo since only registered users may upload products. To open the registration page, click the **Register at Kelkoo** link in Figure 102.

You will first see the page with the active country settings for which an export can be run.

You can export products for the countries listed in the table. The generally available countries can be selected from the drop-down menu in the last row of the table.

These countries are stored in the program. The prerequisite for activating one of these countries is that the corresponding regional settings, language, and currency must be present. See *Country* Settings on page 36.

**Note:** Even after being deleted from the table, the country entry is still available in the drop-down menu. The country is only completely removed from the drop-down menu when you delete the corresponding regional settings under *Country* Settings on page 36.

## Kelkoo – General Properties

General 👰 Products		
Register with Kelkoo		
Country	United Kingdom	
Language	English	
Currency	£	
Automatically Add to Basket	○ Yes ⊙ No	
Shipping Method	Postal Service	
ímage	List View Image	
Description	Description	

Figure 102: General Kelkoo export settings per country

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Register with Kelkoo		Link	
Country	Regional setting	Display	Germany
Language		Display	German
Currency		Display	€
Automatically Add to Basket	The product is added to the basket as soon as a customer is forwarded over the external product link into the shop.	Option button	
Shipping Method	The price for the method you select here is displayed together with the product on the external site.	Drop-down menu	
Image	All the attachments for the product are listed in this drop-down menu. An image file is expected for the export. <i>If you wish to include other file types</i> <i>with the product type, such as PDF</i> <i>files, then you may only select one</i> <i>image file from the drop-down menu.</i>	Drop-down menu	
Description	A description of the product, max. 160 characters.	Drop-down menu	

#### Table 84: Fields for general Kelkoo export settings

Save your entries by clicking Save.

<u>Note:</u> If one of the fields [*Country*, *Language*, or *Currency* are empty, then the export will not be successful.

## Kelkoo – Products

Along with the general settings, you must determine which products are to be exported.

To enter products in the export list, you must add them from the product overview to the tray. See *Tray* on page 19.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Remove Assignment	If you remove products from the export list, the products themselves are not deleted.
Assign All Products	All the shop products are immediately included in the export list.

Table 85: Special batch processing actions for Kelkoo export

## Export

The export of the prepared products is done in two steps: Save the product list in Kelkoo format in the export file and upload the export file to Kelkoo.

To save the product list in the export file in the corresponding Kelkoo format, go to the **General** page and click the **Export** button. See Figure 102. The number on the **Export** button indicates how many products are to be exported.

Finally, you must indicate where the export file is to be stored on your computer and what it is to be called. See Figure 103.

Kelkoo + e	ave As					? ×
General 🦉	Save in:	🗠 My Documen	8	•	+ 🗈 💣 🎟	<b>-</b>
Register	3	My Pictures				
Country	History					
Language						
Currency	Desktop					
With bask	<u></u>					
Shipping N	My Documents					
Image						
Descriptior	My Computer					
Save		1				
	My Network P	File name:	Kelkoo.kel		<b>•</b>	Save
	my network 1	Save as type:	All Files		•	Cancel
		Encoding:	ANSI		<b>T</b>	
						1.

Figure 103: Save the export file

<u>Note:</u> Verify your brower settings for pop-up windows. Since the program opens new windows, pop-ups must be allowed for complete functionality. Otherwise, certain functions cannot be used.

<u>Note</u>: Remember the file name and the directory; you will need this information to upload the export file to Kelkoo.

You must upload the export file to Kelkoo. For this, open the Kelkoo login page.

Use the **Register with Kelkoo** link on the page in Figure 102.

After you sign in, select the country for which you want to upload the product list. This must correspond to the country, for which you have set the export.

Your Kelkoo administration page will be displayed. See. Click the **Upload product data** link. In the next field in, enter the export file name. You can either enter the file name directly or use Browse **to select it**.

**Note:** The extension \*.kel is the default extension used by the system, however, this can be changed by the provider. Do not open or edit the export file, otherwise the correct read-in of the exported file to Kelkoo cannot be guaranteed.

Start the upload by clicking **Submit Catalog**. When this is complete, the products are available for the Kelkoo search.

### Kelkoo Export Errors

When products are included in the export file, the system checks whether all the restrictions for the Kelkoo export have been met. If a product does not fulfill one of the criteria, an error is displayed after the process is complete. There are two classes of errors: simple errors where the data can be automatically corrected in such a way that the product can be exported and serious errors where the product cannot be exported.

After a process is completed, you will get an error message for each error. Then you can edit and correct the data accordingly.

If errors occur, the error messages will provide additional details. To display the details, click the **Details** link.

# **Google Registration**

Something important for the success of your shop is not only that your regular customers known the address of you shop, but also that the shop and your shop products can be found by Internet search engines.

To do this, you need to register your shop address with the search engines. The program provides a registration function for registering with Google, one of the most used search engines.

The link under *Shop Home Page* is your shop address. This is how it is entered into Google. In the "Comment about the Shop" field, you can enter comments or information about the shop. This is to provide information to the employees of Google Services and is not displayed as shop information in the search results.

Registration of your site with Google does not guarantee that it will be included in the search index. For more information on this, also refer to the Google Web site.

<u>Note</u>: Make sure that as many sites as possible link to your shop. The more sites that are linked to your shop, the greater the chance that your shop address will be included in the index and will be found during a Google search.

## Froogle

Froogle (<u>www.froogle.com</u>) is a product search engine on the Internet based on Google technology (<u>www.google.com</u>). In the same way that users use Google to search the Internet for information about Web sites, Froogle searches specifically for products.

You will first see the page with the active country settings for which an export can be run. You can export products for the countries listed in the table. The generally available countries can be selected from the drop-down menu in the last row of the table.

These countries are stored in the program. The prerequisite for activating one of these countries is that the corresponding regional settings, language, and currency must be present. See *Country* Settings on page 36.

**Note:** Even after being deleted from the table, the country entry is still available in the drop-down menu. The country is only completely removed from the drop-down menu when you delete the corresponding regional settings under on page 36 *Country* Settings .

## Froogle- General Properties

Froogle + United Kingdom	
General 👰 Products	
Register with Froogle	
Country	United Kingdom
Language	English
Currency	£
Automatically Add to Basket	🔿 Yes 💿 No
Shipping Method	Postal Service
Image	List View Image
Description	Description
FTP Server Name	hedwig.google.com
FTP Server Port	21
User Name	
Password	
To Froogle Product Search	
Save Export	: (7)

Figure 104: General settings for Froogle export

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Register with Froogle		Link	
Country	Regional setting	Display	Germany
Language		Display	German
Currency		Display	€
Automatically Add to Basket	The product is added to the basket as soon as a customer is forwarded over the external product link into the shop.	Option button	
Shipping Method	The price for the method you select here is displayed together with the product on the external site.	Drop-down menu	
Image	All the attachments for the product are listed in this drop-down menu. An image file is expected for the export. <i>If you wish to include other file types</i> <i>with the product type, such as PDF</i> <i>files, then you may only select one</i> <i>image file from the drop-down menu.</i>	Drop-down menu	
Description	Description of the product	Drop-down menu	
FTP Server Name	Only change the entry after conferring with your provider.	Entry field, alphanumeric	hedwig.google.com
FTP Server Port	Only change the entry after conferring with your provider.	Entry field, numeric	21

### Table 86: Froogle export settings

Field Name/ ID	Meaning	Field Type	Example
User Name	FTP transfer is password protected. You must retrieve an FTP user name from your Froogle administration area. This is not identical with the sign in name for the Froogle administration area. For more information about how to do this, visit <u>www.froogle.com</u> under the link <i>Feed Instructions</i> . Open the <i>FTP</i> <i>Instructions</i> document.		bnfroogle
Password	Password for Froogle data transfer per FTP	Entry field, numeric	pwfroogle
To Froogle Product Search	Note that recently exported products are not displayed until after the automatic FTP upload.	Link	

Save your entries by clicking Save.

### Froogle – Products

Along with the general settings, you must determine which products are to be exported.

To enter products in the export list, you must add them from the product overview to the tray. See *Tray* on page 19.

Batch processing actions are available to manage the table entries. For the basics, see *Batch Processes in* Tables on page 23. The following special actions can be performed:

Action	Comment
Remove Assignment	If you remove products from the export list, the products themselves are not deleted.
Assign All Products	All the shop products are immediately included in the export list.

Table 87: Special batch processing actions for Froogle export

### Export

Start the export of the prepared product list into Froogle format on the **General** page. See. To do this, click **Export**. The data are first saved in a file on the server and are automatically transferred to the Froogle server once a day.

### **Froogle Export Errors**

When products are included in the export file, the system checks whether all the restrictions for the Froogle export have been met. If a product does not fulfill one of the criteria, an error is displayed after the process is complete. There are two classes of errors: simple errors where the data can be automatically corrected in such a way that the product can be exported and serious errors where the product cannot be exported.

After a process is completed, you will get an error message for each error. Then you can edit and correct the data accordingly.

If errors occur, the error messages will provide additional details. To display the details, click the **Details** link.

# **Trusted Shops**

Bei Ihren Kunden besteht ein hohes Sicherheitsbedürfnis bezüglich des Online-Einkaufs. Mit einer Zertifizierung von Trusted Shops (<u>www.TrustedShops.de</u>) gewährleisten Sie diese Sicherheit gegenüber den Kunden und bauen so Vertrauen zu Ihrem Shop auf. Neben der Prüfung auf Sicherheit, Datenschutz und Kundenservice bietet Trusted Shops eine Geld-zurück-Garantie und umfangreichen Kundenservice an. Diese Software ist für die Trusted Shops-Zertifizierung optimal vorbereitet.

Durch dieses Gütesiegel bieten sich Ihnen als Händler auch noch eine Reihe weiterer Vorteile:

- Sie werden als seriöser, geprüfter Online-Händler geführt und auf der Trusted Shops-Webseite aufgelistet
- Reduzierte Kaufabbruchrate, weil die Kunden dem Gütesiegel vertrauen
- Ihr Shop wird auf dem Portal für sicheres Einkaufen mit beworben

Alle notwendigen Informationen finden Sie unter http://www.trustedshops.de/de/shops/index.html.

Wenn die Prüfung erfolgreich abgeschlossen ist, erhalten Sie von Trusted Shops eine Trusted Shop-ID. Die Trusted Shop-ID tragen Sie in das Eingabefeld ein.

Sichern Sie alle Eingaben mit Speichern.

Danach haben Sie die Berechtigung und Möglichkeit, in Ihrem Shop das Gütesiegel von Trusted Shops zu präsentieren. Dafür stehen zwei Navigationselemente zur Verfügung, die Sie entsprechend auf Ihrer Webseite anordnen können, für die Grundlagen siehe dazu *Navigation*, Seite 133.

Der Kunde kann auf das Siegel klicken und wird auf die Seite von Trusted Shops geleitet, die ihm die Vorteile und Sicherheiten eines Online-Shops anzeigt, der Mitglied bei Trusted Shops ist.

## etracker

etracker Web controlling (www.etracker.de) is an Internet application for evaluating user data. These data are recorded and analyzed during the duration. Depending on the services offered, there may be a fee. etracker normally offers recording and evaluation of visits, click behavior, pages opened, click paths, viewing times, and so on. Use these numbers to evaluate and influence the success and effectiveness of your Web site.

Based on a cooperation agreement between etracker and the provider, the shop system transmits additional data to the etracker evaluation to enable additional statistical evaluations.

To be able to use the functions and the data, you must register with etracker. Use the **Register with** etracker link.

This link redirects you to the special etracker registration page for merchants. Enter your data in the form and submit it.

After you register, a security code will be generated for you on the etracker site. See Figure 105. To access this page, log on to the etracker site, click the **HTML Code** link, and then click **Automatic code generation** on the next page.

etracker web controlling®					
Overview >> HTML code		📢 back 🔯 Overview 🔯 Logout 🔯 Home			
etracker HTML code					
Documentation	Automatic code generation	Manual code generation			
<ul> <li>☑ How to insert the etracker code</li> <li>☑ Tips &amp; tricks</li> <li>☑ Code versions</li> <li>☑ Documentation for advanced services</li> </ul>	HTML-Code Generator     FLASH environment     JPH environment     JSP environment     JSP environment     CFM environment	<ul> <li>23 Basic code</li> <li>23 Website goal code</li> <li>23 Landing page code</li> </ul>			
Automatic code generation					
For web pages programmed with PHP, JSP or JSP, etracker offers a simple way to insert the etracker code on the generated pages by means of an included function.					
You can use this option, for example, to include the results of a database query in the page name for the etracker code. This way you can generate even more detailed information about your visitors.					
For a page where visitors can view the details of a product, for example, you could use a static page name like 'Product Details' or you could add the product name to get 'Product Details – Notebook 1.2 GHz'. This way you would quickly recognize in your page statistics which products your visitors like best.					
The following security code is required in orde	r to use the etracker classes and function	s - it should be passed as a paramter accordingly.			
Security code:	Xyz123				
HTML-Code Generator					
etracker HTML CODE Generator.exe					
HTML-Code Generator v3.1 / Code v2.0.6 (40	) КВ)				
Using the 'HTML-Code Generator' program, Window	vs users can automatically add the Profession	al Code to their HTML files via drag & drop.			
FLASH environment					

Figure 105: Your etracker security code

Enter the security code in the *Security Code* field.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

After registering, you will receive an address from etracker which you can use to immediately access your statistic page. You can find this address on your etracker page under *Settings* on the *Direct Login Bookmark*.

In order to let you quickly access this address, you have the option of saving it in the general etracker details. Simply copy the address into the *Direct Login Bookmark* field.

After saving, the etracker access link lets you immediately enter in your etracker administration area with just a click.

You can select which of your shop pages will send data to etracker. To do this, click the Pages tab.

The table lists all pages that can send data to etracker. You can set the importance of each page with the check box in the *Importance* column. This means that the data for the pages set as most important are shown first on the statistics page.

Use the check box in the last column to determine the Web page that will actually transmit values to etracker. Only these values will be evaluated for statistics and sent to you.

Save your entries by clicking Save.

<u>Note:</u> Depending on your optimization settings, you will need to update your pages after saving them. For more on this, see *Optimization* on page 33.

To view the evaluations and statistics for your shop, open your etracker administration page.

## **Product Recommendations**

An important marketing and advertising instrument is customer-to-customer recommendation of your shop and products. This information exchange is based on e-mail.

With the first option button, *Enable product recommendations*, you determine whether this function will be available to the customers or not.

You can also define whether this function is available only to your registered users or whether all shop customers can use the product recommendation function.

Sending e-mail messages with recommendations is extra work for your system. You can keep this under control with the field *Maximum number of recommendations*. Here you can enter a maximum number of product recommendations per day and per registered customer.

<u>Note</u>: This limitation can only be set for registered customers. If this function is available to all customers (registered and unregistered), then all customers can send product recommendations up to a maximum limit. This is set at 100 recommendations per customer per day.

Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

*Caution:* For the system to be able to send product recommendation e-mail messages, this must be activated in the e-mail settings. For more on this, see *E-mail* Settings on page 37.

In order to initiate a product recommendation, the customer must click the Recommend Product link.

## eBay

For information about these settings, see *eBay* Settings on page 71.

## Offers

	Platform / eBay ID	Created/Start △▼	End ∆⊽	Current Bid
r Teddy Bear	SB eBay_Test	5/27/05 11:58 AM		\$0.00 (0)
r Hydro 2.0	se eBay_Test	5/26/05 11:58 AM		\$0.00 (0 of 1)
ingaz CV470 Valve	se eBay_Test	5/26/05 11:56 AM		\$0.00 (0)
er Kangaroo	se eBay_Test	5/26/05 11:54 AM		\$0.00 (0)
a El Capitan IV	se eBay_Test	5/26/05 11:54 AM		\$0.00 (0)
r Hydro 2.0	<b>\$8</b> 4502997332	5/26/05 11:54 AM	6/2/05 11:54 AM	\$0.00 (0 of 1)
ingaz CV470 Valve	se 4502997331	5/26/05 11:52 AM	6/2/05 11:52 AM	\$0.00 (0)
r Hydro 2.0	<b>4502958912</b>	5/20/05 12:02 PM	5/21/05 12:02 PM	\$0.00 (0)
r Hydro 2.0	se eBay_Test	5/20/05 11:58 AM		\$0.00 (0)
ingaz CV270 Valve	se eBay_Test	5/19/05 2:08 PM		\$0.00 (0)
oducts from Object Tray			1	
	er Hydro 2.0 ingaz CV470 Valve er Kangaroo a El Capitan IV er Hydro 2.0 ingaz CV470 Valve er Hydro 2.0 er Hydro 2.0 er Hydro 2.0 er Hydro 2.0	ar Hydro 2.0       SB       eBay_Test         ingaz CV470 Valve       SB       eBay_Test         ar Kangaroo       SB       eBay_Test         ar Kangaroo       SB       eBay_Test         ar Kangaroo       SB       eBay_Test         ar Hydro 2.0       SB       4502997332         ingaz CV470 Valve       SB       4502997331         ar Hydro 2.0       SB       4502958912         ar Hydro 2.0       SB       eBay_Test	ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:58 AM         ingaz CV470 Valve       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:56 AM         ar Kangaroo       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         ar Kangaroo       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         a El Capitan IV       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:52 AM         ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/26/05 11:52 AM         ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM         ar Hydro 2.0       Beay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM	in ready seal       image: cosy_rest       intrace costs and image: cosy_rest         ingaz CV470 Valve       Sile eBay_Test       5/26/05 11:56 AM         isr Kangaroo       Sile eBay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         isr Kangaroo       Sile eBay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         a El Capitan IV       Sile eBay_Test       5/26/05 11:54 AM         ingaz CV470 Valve       Sile 4502997332       5/26/05 11:52 AM         ingaz CV470 Valve       Sile 4502997331       5/26/05 11:52 AM         ingaz CV470 Valve       Sile 4502958912       5/20/05 12:02 PM         isr Hydro 2.0       Sile eBay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM         isr Hydro 2.0       Sile eBay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM         isr Hydro 2.0       Sile eBay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM         isr Hydro 2.0       Sile eBay_Test       5/20/05 11:58 AM

Figure 106: Overview of current eBay offers

The *Offer* column contains the name of the offer. The symbol shows the status. If you click the name, you open the offer details page. This page is described in the following section.

The individual symbols have the following meanings:

Symbol	Meaning
1	The offer is created, but not yet tested and not yet entered in eBay. It can still be edited.
	The offer is created and tested but not yet entered in eBay. It can still be edited.
<b>1</b>	The offer has been created, has been confirmed, and will be placed in eBay at the set time. It can still be edited.
-7	The offer has been placed in eBay and the offer is running. It can no longer be edited.
	The sale is finalized. The product has been sold.
-	The offer has finalized. The product has not been sold.
<b>#</b>	The offer has been created as a "Buy It Now" offer, but has not yet been confirmed or placed in eBay. It can still be edited.
<b>4</b>	The offer has been created as a "Buy It Now" offer, and has been confirmed, but has not yet been placed in eBay. It can still be edited.
	The offer has been created as a "Buy It Now" offer, has been confirmed, and will be placed in eBay at the set time. It can still be edited.
<b>1</b>	The offer has been placed in eBay as a "Buy it Now" offer and the offer is running. It can no longer be edited.
	The offer is finalized, and the product has been sold for a fixed price.
<b></b>	The offer is finalized, and the product has not been sold for a fixed price.

Table 88: Symbols for eBay offers

In the *Bid* column, you see the current bid for the product and how many bidders have bid on the item. If you have more than one product to offer for sale, you will see the number of products offered that have been bid on in round brackets.

### Batch Processing

#### Duplicate

Use *Duplicate* to create identical copies of selected offers with identical properties and parameters.

Note: When you duplicate running and finished offers, the new offer is created in the start status.

#### **Creating Repeating Offers**

You can schedule a repeating item. This means that offers with the same details can be repeated periodically.

<u>Note</u>: A prerequisite for creating recurring items is that the initial offer exists as a planned offer with a set start time. See also *Offer Creation* – *Details* on page 197.

#### Select *Schedule a Repeat Item* from the drop-down menu and click **Execute**.

You can now set the repetition intervals. Enter the interval between offers and how often the offers should be created:

Default Values       Offers       Orders         Image: Contract of the sele of a selected item. Set the interval and the number of times the sale of a nitem should be repeated. The start time is the scheduled starting time of the original offer.							
	Offer	ΔV	Platform / eBay ID △♡	Created/Start	∆₹	End ∆⊽	Current Bid
🕑 📆 Deute	er Teddy Bear		SB eBay_Test	5/27/05 11:58 AM			\$0.00 (0)
Jatan al 2	Deuter Teddy Bear     E eBay_Test     5/27/05 11:58 AM     \$0.00 (0)       Interval 2     Hours V     Repetitions 3     Create     Cancel						

Figure 107: Setting repetition intervals

After entering all the necessary values, start the action by clicking Create.

#### Verify

The current settings are tested for correctness and whether the offer can be put into eBay without any errors.

<u>Note</u>: You can only test new offers. This means that offers that are not yet running in eBay or that are already finalized.

#### Upload to eBay

Use this action to immediately enter the offers into eBay. For this, it does not matter whether a manual or a planned start time has been defined.

<u>Note</u>: An offer must be verified before it can be sent to eBay. Offers that have not yet been verified cannot be entered into eBay.

#### Delete

To remove offers from the table, use the batch processing action *Delete*.

**Note:** Offers that are running in eBay or are finished are only removed from the table and not deleted in the eBay system.

#### **Update All Offers**

Use this function to query the current status of all the offers in the table at eBay.

#### **Create New Offer**

To create a new offer on eBay, you must select at least one product and place it in the tray. For general information about working with the tray, see *Tray* on page 19.

When creating new offers, default values are used. See also on page 199 *Default* Values. To edit settings and properties further, open the eBay assistant by clicking the name of the offer.

It is also possible to create a new offer directly from a product. For more on this, see *Product Details* – eBay on page 93.

#### Offer Settings/eBay Assistant

The eBay assistant in the shop system takes you step-by-step through the necessary settings to enable you to prepare the data necessary to create eBay offers comfortably and smoothly.

<u>Note</u>: We recommend becoming familiar with the meaning and use of the individual values. To do so, read the information in the chapter *Preparation* on page 71, as well as the instructions you have received from eBay as you registered as a seller. Also, make sure you have an overview of which functions incur additional fees.

The assistant contains seven steps that can be done sequentially or in any order.

**Caution:** To save entered or changed data on individual pages, you must make the changes to the pages by going back and forth using the **Next** >> or < < **Previous** buttons. Only by doing this are the data saved. If you change pages using the links in the tab headings, the data are **not** saved. This also applies if you leave the assistant without confirming your changes via **Next** >> or << **Previous**.

To start the assistant, click the name of the respective offer.

#### Title

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Product		Link	
Offer type	The options are provided by eBay.	Drop-down menu	

#### Table 89: Properties of the Title page

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
eBay Account	You decide which eBay page the offer is placed on. For more on this, see <i>eBay</i> Accounts on page 72.	Drop-down menu	
Name		Entry field <b>,</b> alphanumeric	Deuter Hydro 2
Subtitle	This is a short description of the offer, which is displayed on the eBay page and also in the gallery directly under the name of the offer.	Entry field, alphanumeric	
Description	Description of the offer that is displayed for eBay bidders. For information about formatting, see <i>Using HTML Commands in Entry</i> Fields on page 26 and <i>WYSIWYG</i> Editor on page 26. Product data is displayed via the template.	Text field, alphanumeric	<p>STRONG×FONT size=5&gt;Deuter Hydro 2.0&gt; </p> <p>New 2004. Small drinking system backpack with</p>
Template + Assign	The selected template is applied to the description. See also <i>Templates</i> on page 74.	Drop-down menu	

<u>Caution</u>: If you select another eBay account that is based on a different eBay platform and you save this change, the settings made under **Shipping** and **Payment** are lost.

<u>Note</u>: Due to security reasons, eBay restricts the use of active page contents such as JavaScript, Flash, and so on. If you use such elements in your templates, it is possible that your pages will not be displayed properly on eBay. Therefore, you should check how your eBay offers are displayed and make the necessary changes to your templates.

Save your entries by clicking **Next** >>.

#### Category

Each offer must be assigned to a specific eBay category.

When the page is displayed, you see the category number that is assigned to your product in the *Category* field. During creation, you see a *O*. You also see the main eBay catalog categories.

There are three ways of entering a category number:

- If you know the number of the category, you can enter it directly.
- In the *Last Used Categories* drop-down menu, the numbers and the names of categories that you have used most recently are listed. Click this number in the drop-down menu to transfer it to the *Category* field.
- Click through the category structure until you arrive at the correct category. Select this and the category number is transferred to the *Category* field.

As long as the category name is a link, you must continue following the structure, as only categories with no sub-categories can be used for assignment.

To select a category, click the respective option field. The number in entered in the *Category* field and this offer is placed in this category.

Save your entries by clicking **Next** >> or << **Previous**.

#### Details

In the third step, you define settings that determine the process for the offers.

itle Category	Y Details 🖗 Layout Shipping Payment Verification
Quantity	1 4
Start Price	\$1.00 \$
Buy It Now	○ Yes \$74.95 \$ \$
	No
Private Offer	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🤅
Start Time	Manually Start the Sale
	O Start the sale at this time 5/26/05 3:06 PM
Duration	○ 1 ○ 3 ○ 5 ⊙ 7 ○ 10 Days

Figure 108: eBay Assistant, step 3

The individual fields have the following meanings:

Field Name	Meaning	Field Type	Example
Quantity	The number depends on your user profile in eBay.	Entry field, numeric	1
Start Price	It must be at least 1 € total.	Entry field, currency	1€
Buy It Now	If you activate "Buy It Now", you cannot use a private offer.	Option field + Entry field, currency	74,95€
Private Offer		Option button	
Start Time	Use the symbol 📴 to enter the current data and time.	Option field + Entry field, date/time format	12/22/04 10:38
Duration		Option button	

#### Table 90: Properties of the *Details* page

Save your entries by clicking Next >> or << Previous.

#### Layout

Use this page to take advantage of the additional options eBay offers to present your item more effectively. See

http://pages.eBay.de/help/sell/promoting\_ov.htmlhttp://pages.ebay.de/help/sell/promoting\_ov.html.

**Note:** Note that using certain eBay options may incur additional fees. You will see how much your offer costs after verification. See *Verify* on page 194.

fitle Category	Details Layout 🖗 Shipping Payment Verification			
Step 4: Additional Layout Options. Activate additional layout options to present your product more effectively. Note that the use of some options is connected with a fee.				
Bold	○Yes ④No ④			
Highlight	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🎚			
Bordered	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🌗			
Hit Counter	⊙ No Hit Counter ◯ Andale Style ◯ Green LED			
Featured Item	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🎚			
Featured Item on the	🔿 Yes 💿 No 🌗			
Home Page				
Gallery	No Gallery     Preview (70%)			
	🔿 Normal Gallery 🎚			
	O Featured Gallery			
Link to Gallery Image	http://pdomin.jena.epages.de/WebRoot/Store/Shops/DemoSh			
	de_3201212002_m.jpg			
	Preview			
Link to Product Image				
	de_3201212002.jpg			

Figure 109: eBay Assistant, step 4

The drop-down menus for image types list all the images that you have available for the product. For more on this, see *Product Details* – Images– Images on page 81. The address of the image is automatically entered in the respective entry field. If you would like to link to an image which is not listed in the drop-down menu, enter the address of the image in the entry field.

You can test whether the image is available at any time by clicking **Preview**.

Save your entries by clicking **Next** >> Or << **Previous**.

#### Shipping

In step five of the assistant, you can define shipping methods that you wish to offer to your eBay customers. eBay presents a selection of shipping types to choose from.

To activate additional shipping methods for your offer, select them from the drop-down menu. Enter a corresponding value in the entry field in the *Price* column. Save your entries by clicking **Save**. You can offer a maximum of three shipping methods.

**Note:** The shipping methods listed here are only buyer information. They should correspond to those you offer in your shop. The types that are valid for the customer are shown in the order finalization process in the shop.

For more information, read the caution box in *Title* on page 195.

Go from page to page by clicking **Next** >> or << **Previous** or click the tab headings.

#### Payment

Parallel to the shipping methods, eBay offers a specific set of payment methods that you can choose from on each country page. You may select as many as you like but you must select at least one method.

To assign a payment method to your offer, select it from the drop-down menu at the end of the table. Save your entries by clicking **Save**.

For more information, see the *Caution* section in *Title* on page 195.

**Note:** If your preferred payment method is not listed, select the entry *See Article Description* and refer there to your desired payment method.

**Note:** The shipping methods listed here are only buyer information. They should correspond to those you offer in your shop. The methods that are valid for the customer are shown in the order finalization process in the shop.

Go from page to page **by clicking** Next >> **or** << Previous or click the tab headings.

#### Verification

The last step of the eBay assistant is verification of all properties. This is done to make sure the offer is correctly created in eBay.

Click the **Verify** button or **Activate Scheduling** to test your settings. If all the information is correct, the fees for the offer are displayed.

If one of your settings does not correspond to eBay requirements, an error message is displayed.

After a successful verification, you can either immediately place the offer in eBay or let the offers with a scheduled start time be placed in eBay at the time indicated.

If an offer starts or ends on eBay, the properties can no longer be changed.

Use the **Orders** tab to see the order for the respective offer after the offer is completed. For more on this, see *Orders* below.

### **Default Values**

There are many settings for an offer, and many properties are the same for most offers. For this reason, you can assign standard values to these settings to avoid having to enter them again for each offer.

These settings can be changed at any time so that you can create your own default settings to use as a template. To do so, click the link **Customize Default Values for Offers**.

The parameters that should be entered are part of the offer properties and are described there. See *Offer Settings/eBay Assistant* on page 195.

### Orders

As soon as a bidder buys or wins your product, this offer is marked as finalized and entered into the table of eBay orders.

	Offer	User Account	Price	Customer	Order	Feedback
<b>S</b>	4502958912	🗟 tmangner	\$74.95	Max Mustermann	1012	•
	4502997359	🖂 tmangner	\$7.95		Transaction is still open	
						Number: 2
eedba		🖲 Positive ( Neutr				

Figure 110: Overview of eBay orders

The individual columns have the following meaning:

Column Name	Comment
Offer	Initial offer for the order. The symbol indicates the eBay platform.
User Account	eBay user, who won the offer. Click $\widehat{\bowtie}$ to send an e-mail message to the address in his eBay customer profile.
Price	Price for which he won the offer.
Customer	Name of the bidder in the customer administration of the shop. Any customer whose details are transferred for the first time from eBay is created in the system as an unregistered customer. The eBay e-mail address is saved during this process. During further data transfers, the customer is "recognized" using this e-mail address and all the eBay orders for this customer are bundled.
Order	Order number, when an offer has been finalized in the online shop. Otherwise, a notification is issued that the order is not yet finalized.
Feedback	

Table 91: Table columns for eBay offers

<u>Note:</u> The bidder must finalize the entire process in your shop. For this, he receives a corresponding email message from the system. See *Configuring Notification* E-mail on page 75.

Since it is usual in eBay for the seller and the buyer to rate one another, you can submit a rating for the buyer on this page. To do so, select one of the three options and enter an appropriate comment in the *Feedback Text* field.

Afterwards, submit the rating for this order by selecting the appropriate check box and clicking **Send Feedback**.

The rating submitted is displayed in the last column of the table by a symbol.

<u>Note:</u> You can only submit a rating for each offer once. Making a correction by submitting a second rating is not possible!

eBay orders are indicated in the list of all orders by the eBay symbol.

## Performing Searches for eBay Offers

There is a simple and an advanced search.

The following buttons are important for searches:

Start the search according to the entries in the search fields.

Reset the search. All the entries are deleted from the search fields.

Switch between simple and advanced search.

### Simple Search

For the simple search, you use three fields to filter orders: Offer Number, eBay Account, and Status.

### **Advanced Search**

The advanced search offers you additional search fields.

When entering time values, the time and date must always be entered completely. Use the calendar symbol ( 📴 ) to automatically enter the current date and time.

# 11. Glossary

Administration Area	All the Web pages that the merchant can use after sign-in to fulfill his responsibilities. Each role in the shop system works in a separate area within the hierarchy in order to clearly separate responsibilities.
Administration Page	The Web site that appears after signing in where all functions are performed. You can access all necessary functions on this page. The navigation bar, the left navigation area, and the working area are displayed here.
Attribute	A freely-definable descriptor for a product or customer. Attributes are used to define properties, for example, prices, dimensions, colors, and so on.
Batch Processing	An action that affects multiple elements at one time. This option is mainly offered in tables, where multiple instances of the same action can be combined into a multiple or batch process. For example, the deletion of more than one table row at one time.
Button	A function area on Web pages used to trigger actions. They are usually graphically designed to look like buttons.
Catalog	This term describes the entire inventory of all the products. This catalog is the equivalent of a mail-order catalog. Categories are used to set up structured hierarchies.
Category	A subgroup of a catalog. Categories act as containers for product groups, for example, computers, office supplies, shoes, and so on.
Check box	A field in a form; this is selected or cleared by clicking it with the cursor. It is used to make specific selections.
Context Menu	A menu which changes its functional contents according to the chosen working area.
Cookie	A small file containing text information that is sent from a Web server to a Web browser. This information is saved on the hard drive and can be recalled later. Cookies are often necessary for Internet applications. See also <i>Session Cookies</i> .
Currency Format	A currency-dependent format for price information. The system formats the prices according to the set currency.
Default Setting	The status of the attributes. If the status has been set, the attribute or the value will be used as the default value until the user makes a different selection.
Duplicate	Making a 1:1 copy, with the exception of the ID. This is helpful, for example, when creating products from a template product (if one exists), from which a majority of the attributes can be transferred.
Entry field	These are the fields in forms where the user can enter information.
Favorite	Web pages that are repeatedly opened and used. This page is saved as a link in a special folder and can be opened with a single click.

FTP	File Transfer Protocol FTP is a protocol for transmitting data over networks. This is used to transfer files between different computers, regardless of the operating system and location.
HTML	(Hyper Text Markup Language) source code for Web pages that determines how the content is displayed. Individual HTML formatting instructions are called HTML tags.
ID	This is a unique piece of identification for a data element (product, customer, attribute, and so on.) This ID is used in the database and is not identical to the name displayed on the Web pages. Furthermore, IDs serve to uniquely classify data when exporting and importing and to manage objects in multiple languages.
Link	A link to another Internet page or to a document.
Localization	Preparation of the data and content of a Web page so it can be displayed in another language. Some attributes can be localized, that is, you can collect different values for these attributes in various languages. They are then displayed in the respective language, for example, descriptions or names.
Merchants	A role in the shop system structure. The merchant selects a shop type from among those offered by the provider and then uses it to offer his products to end customers. He can define shop structure and design.
Name	Name for an object or method in the administration area and in the online shop. This is language-dependent. In this way, a more descriptive name can be displayed in any language on the Web pages.
Navigation Bar	Active area with a structure of links for selecting specific functions. In the program, it is shown on the top section of the administration page.
Navigation History	Navigation bar that shows how you arrived at your current location in the program. The individual hierarchy levels are shown as links so that you can go backwards step-by-step.
Option button	A field in a form that requires you to make a decision. Option buttons present several possible options, only one of which can be selected.
PangV	German Price Indication Ordinance. This sets forth which regulations a merchant must observe when setting prices in Germany. For a version of these regulations in German, see <u>http://bundesrecht.juris.de/bundesrecht/PangV/</u>
Path / file path	Information about the location of a file on a storage medium, for example, C:\Windows Mixer\system\notepad.exe.
Pixel	A pixel is the smallest graphical unit that a computer can display.
Provider	Providers provide hardware and software solutions. Usually, consulting services are also offered.
Reference Unit	The base unit of quantity used for comparing products by reverse calculating the price of the products. For an example, see <i>reference</i> unit on page 76.reference unit

#### Glossary

Session Cookies	A session cookie is a piece of text that is written to the browser's memory when specific Web pages are opened (at the beginning of a session). A session cookie authorizes you to use all the functions on a Web site. After signing out or closing your browser (to end a session), the session cookie is deleted.
Shift Lock Key	A key that activates continuous capitalization. Deactivate this feature by pressing the key again. When this key is activated, this is usually indicated by a small light on the keyboard.
Shop	See Web shop
Shop Types	Products of the provider that he sells or leases to merchants or shop operators. Each shop type is offered with specific functions and in varying price classes. Shop types are the basis for shops that you offer to your merchants.
Sign In	A procedure for obtaining access to a program by entering a user name and password. Frequently, the combination of both a user name and password is called a sign-in.
Storefront	The "customer page" of a Web shop. All the Web pages that belong to your shop.
Text Field	The field in a form where you can type a large amount of text. It is mainly meant for entering descriptions or item names.
Tool Tip	A short informational text; this is displayed automatically when you move the cursor over a specific functional area. The presence of a ToolTip is often indicated by a symbol next to an entry field.
Upload	If you want to publish files or pages on the Internet, you have to copy them onto a server computer. This copying procedure (from a local computer to a remote computer) is called uploading.
URL	An abbreviation for Uniform Resource Locator, the unique Internet address of a Web page. The URL is used to open a page in the browser.
Variable	Variables are placeholders for concrete values which are first entered by the user when the shop is online.
Variable Types	You can define various types of variables. The type of variable defines how the system can process it. For more details, see Attribute Types on page 28.
Visibility	The status of data; this determines whether these data can be seen by the customer in the Web shop or not.
Web Shops	An Internet program that contains all the functions necessary for selling products or services. In this program, the shop is created based upon a shop type that the ePages provider has defined. The merchant generates a shop online, modifies the structure and design, and enters his products and services into the system to open his Internet sales channel.
Working Area	The portion of the administration page in which data and tables are displayed and managed. The content is dependent upon the function selected in navigation.

# 12. Index

# Α

Accessories	91
Administration Page	17
Left Navigation Area	17
Main Navigation Bar	17
Working Area	17
Administrator Menu	17
AVS Code	163

## В

BMECat-Import	102, 127
DMECal-IIIpoli	102, 127

# С

Categories	115
Articles	118
Basic Category	116
Category	117
Contact Information	122
Creating	117
Customer Information	124
Design Your Own Pages	120
General Properties	117
Home Page	121
Layout	118
Link	121
Pages	117
Products	118
Promotional Products	125
Promotional Products – General Propertie	s 125
, Promotional Products – Products	125
Structure Elements	116
Terms and Conditions	123
Category Export	126
Category Import	126
Country Settings	36
Currencies	36
Languages	36
Regional Settings	36
Coupons	176
Conditions	178
Coupon Codes	178
General Properties	177
Credit Note	159
Cross Selling	88,91
Accessories	91
Product Comparison	92
Related Products	92
Currencies	36
Swiss Francs	37
Customer Export	112
Customer Settings	64

Countries	65
Creating a New Customer Attribute	66
Customer Attribute Details	66
Customer Attributes	66
Customer Groups	64
Registration	64
Sign In	65
Customers	107
Address Information	107
Advanced Search	113
Creating New	112
Customer Account	109
Orders	111
Search	112
Sign In	110
Simple Search	113
Special Attributes	111

## D

Default Settings Deferred Payment	22 61
Deletion	
Deletion Confirmation	18
Design	129
Navigation	133
Settings	142

## Ε

eBay	93, 192
Accounts	72
Authentication	73
Default Values	199
Offers	193
Orders	199
Search	200
Settings	71
Templates	74
E-mail Events	
Special Cases	39
E-mail Settings	37
E-mail System Set-Up	38
Events	37
etracker	190
Export	30
Category Export	126
Customer Export	112
Product Export	102

### F

-	
Favorites	19
Froogle	187
Export	189

#### Index

Export Errors	189	Creating New	169
Export List	189	General Details	170
General Details	188	Subscription	174

187

## G

Google Registration
---------------------

# Η

Help	20
Context Sensitive	20
History	19
HTML Tags	26
Program	26
WYSIWYG Editor	26

## I

Import	30, 31
Category Import	126
Customer Import	112
Product Import	102
Import File	31
Invoice	157

## Κ

184
185
187
185
184

## L

Languages	36
Loading Times	33

## Μ

Marketing	167
-----------	-----

## Ν

Navigation Bars Navigation Elements	131 135
Navigation History	25
Newsletter	
Recipients	173
Sending	171
Newsletter Campaigns	167
Addressees	174
Creating New	167
General Details	167
Importing Addressees	175
Newsletters	169
Attachment	173
Content Creation	171

## 0

Optimization	33
Order Tracking	151
Orders	143
Advanced Search	145
Credit Note	159
Documents	149
Editing Details	147
Finalizing Documents	160
General Properties	145
Invoice	157
Order Details	148
Packing Slip	150
Search	144
Settings	67
Simple Search	144
T-Pay	163
UPS Packing Slip	151
WorldPay	161
WorldPay General Information	161

### Ρ

Pangora	181
Export	183
Export List	183
General Details	182
Pangora	102
Export Errors	184
Payment Methods	44
At No Charge	46
Creating New	45
Credit Card, Manual	48
Deferred payment	61
Dependencies	56
Direct Debit	47
Flat Rate	48
Free Shipping From	48
WorldPay	50
Price Lists	99
Creating New	100
Customer Groups	101
Customers	101
General Details	100
Shopping Basket Discount	101
Prices	89,90
Product Bundles	94
Associated Products	94
Product Comparison	92
Product Export	102
Product Import	102
Product Recommendations	192
Product Search	

#### eBay

Inventory Search	104
Shop Search Function	105
Text Search	104
Product Settings	69
Auto Cross Selling	70
Stock Level Options	69
Product Types	95
Attribute Details	96
Attributes	96
Creating a New	95
Creating a New Attribute	96
Default Product Type	95
Details	96
Layout	98
Value Selection for Attributes	97
Products	77
Bulk Prices	89
Category	83
Description	79
Discount Calculation	90
Images	81
Prices	89
Prices/Stock/Dimensions	77
Quantity Discount	89
Search	103
Slideshow	83
Special Attributes	81
Value Discount	90
Variations	84
Productss	
Creating New	93

# R

Registered User	
Accessing User Data	17
Sign Out	18
Related Products	92

# S

Search	103
Settings	33
Setup Assistant	19
Shipping Methods	42
Creating New	42
Dependencies	56
Fixed Price	43
Free Shipping	43
Free Shipping From	44
Shipping Options	
General Details	58
Selecting	<i>59</i>
Shipping Options	57
Shop Address	35
Shop Home Page	20
Shop Name	33
Shop Preview	21

Shop Status	33
General Details	33
Shopping Basket	
Actions	67
Confirm Terms and Conditions	68
Minimum Order Amount	68
Notification Messages	68
Selecting the Tax Area	68
Settings	67
Shopping Basket Discount	101
Signed-in Users	
Edit	17
Sorting Key	25
Styles	129
Content Area	140
Customization	136
General	130
General Design Attributes	131
Horizontal Areas	138
Templates	129
Vertical Areas	139
Symbol Set	133

## Т

Tables	
Batch Processes in Tables	23
Sorting Using Column Headings	24
Sorting with the Sorting Key	25
Tax Areas	40
Tax Calculation	40
Tax Classes	41
Tax Matrix	40
Tax Models	41
Text with Value Selection	
Usage	29
T-Pay	54
Allgemein	163
Bezahlvorgang	163
Konto einrichten	55
Suche Transaktionen	166
Transaktionen	165
Transaktionen auslösen	165
Tray	19
Trusted Shops	190

## U

Updating Web Pages	33
User Management	35
Creating Users	35
General Details	35
Utilization	34

### V

Variable Types	28
Date	29

Index

Date and Time	29
Decimal Numbers	29
File	29
Integer	28
Language-Dependent File	29
Language-Dependent Text	28
Language-Dependent Text with Value Selection	
	28
Money	29
Text	28
Text with Value Selection	28
Time	29
Yes/No	29
Variations	84
Creating New	84
Cross Selling	88
Extending	88